Respiratory Management in Critical Care
Edited by M J D Griffiths and T W Evans
Respiratory Management in Critical Care

Edited by

MJD Griffiths
Unit of Critical Care, Imperial College of Science, Technology and Medicine, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

TW Evans
Unit of Critical Care, Imperial College of Science, Technology and Medicine, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK
Contributors

**K Atabai**  
Lung Biology Center, Department of Medicine, University of California, San Francisco, USA

**SV Baudoin**  
Department of Anaesthesia, Royal Victoria Infirmary, Newcastle upon Tyne, UK

**GJ Bellingan**  
Department of Intensive Care Medicine, University College London Hospitals, The Middlesex Hospital, London, UK

**RM du Bois**  
Interstitial Lung Disease Unit, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

**RJ Boyton**  
Host Defence Unit, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

**S Brett**  
Department of Anaesthesia and Intensive Care, Hammersmith Hospital, London, UK

**JJ Cordingley**  
Department of Anaesthesia and Intensive Care, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

**PA Corris**  
Department of Respiratory Medicine, Cardiothoracic Block, Freeman Hospital, Newcastle upon Tyne, UK

**J Cranshaw**  
Unit of Critical Care, NHLI Division, Imperial College of Science, Technology and Medicine, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

**J Dakin**  
Unit of Critical Care, NHLI Division, Imperial College of Science, Technology and Medicine  
Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

**AC Davidson**  
Departments of Critical Care and Respiratory Support (Lane Fox Unit), Guys & St Thomas’ Hospital, London, UK

**SC Davies**  
Department of Haematology and Sickle Cell Unit, Central Middlesex Hospital, London, UK

**J Dunning**  
Pulmonary Vascular Diseases Unit, Papworth Hospital, Cambridge and Department of Medicine, University of Cambridge School of Clinical Medicine, Addenbrooke’s Hospital, Cambridge, UK

**TW Evans**  
Unit of Critical Care, NHLI Division, Imperial College of Science, Technology and Medicine, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

**S Ewig**  
Institut Clinic De Pneumologia i Cirurgia Toracica, Hospital Clinic, Servei de Pneumologia i Al·lergia Respiratoria, Barcelona, Spain

**CS Garrard**  
Intensive Care Unit, John Radcliffe Hospital, Oxford, UK

**A Gascoigne**  
Department of Respiratory Medicine and Intensive Care, Royal Victoria Infirmary, Newcastle upon Tyne, UK

**J Goldstone**  
Department of Intensive Care Medicine, University College London Hospitals, The Middlesex Hospital, London, UK

**P Goldstraw**  
Department of Thoracic Surgery, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

**JT Granton**  
University Health Network, Mount Sinai Hospital and the Interdepartmental Division of Critical Care, University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario, Canada

**ME Griffith**  
Department of Renal Failure, St Mary’s Hospital NHS Trust, London, UK

**MJD Griffiths**  
Unit of Critical Care, NHLI Division, Imperial College of Science, Technology and Medicine, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

**N Hart**  
Sleep and Ventilation Unit, Royal Brompton and Harefield NHS Trust, London, UK

**AT Jones**  
Adult Intensive Care Unit, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

**BF Keogh**  
Department of Anaesthesia and Intensive Care, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

**OM Kon**  
Chest and Allergy Department, St Mary’s Hospital NHS Trust, London, UK
SE Lapinsky  
Mount Sinai Hospital and the Interdepartmental Division of Critical Care, University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario, Canada

RM Leach  
Department of Intensive Care, Guy's & St Thomas' NHS Trust, London, UK

JL Lordan  
Department of Respiratory Medicine, Cardiothoracic Block, Freeman Hospital, Newcastle upon Tyne, UK

V Mak  
Department of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine, Central Middlesex Hospital, London, UK

MA Matthay  
Cardiovascular Research Institute and Departments of Medicine and Anesthesia, University of California, San Francisco, USA

K McNeil  
Pulmonary Vascular Diseases Unit, Papworth Hospital, Cambridge and Department of Medicine, University of Cambridge School of Clinical Medicine, Addenbrooke's Hospital, Cambridge, UK

DM Mitchell  
Chest and Allergy Department, St Mary's Hospital NHS Trust, London, UK

ED Moloney  
Imperial College School of Medicine at the National Heart and Lung Institute, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

NW Morrell  
Pulmonary Vascular Diseases Unit, Papworth Hospital, Cambridge and Department of Medicine, University of Cambridge School of Clinical Medicine, Addenbrooke's Hospital, Cambridge, UK

P Phipps  
Department of Intensive Care, Royal Prince Alfred Hospital, Sydney, Australia

AK Simonds  
Sleep and Ventilation Unit, Royal Brompton and Harefield NHS Trust, London, UK

AS Slutsky  
Department of Critical Care and Department of Medicine, St Michael's Hospital, Interdepartmental Division of Critical Care, University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario, Canada

SR Thomas  
Department of Respiratory Medicine, St George's Hospital, London, UK

A Torres  
Institut Clinic De Pneumologia i Cirurgia Toracica, Hospital Clinic, Servei de Pneumologia i Al.lergia Respiratoria, Barcelona, Spain

DF Treacher  
Department of Intensive Care, Guy's & St Thomas' NHS Trust, London, UK

AU Wells  
Interstitial Lung Disease Unit, Royal Brompton Hospital, London, UK

T Whitehead  
Department of Respiratory Medicine, Central Middlesex Hospital, London, UK
## Contents

**Contributors** vii  

### Introduction  
MJD Griffiths, TW Evans 1  

1. Pulmonary investigations for acute respiratory failure  
   J Dakin, MJD Griffiths 3  

2. Oxygen delivery and consumption in the critically ill  
   RM Leach, DF Treacher 11  

3. Critical care management of community acquired pneumonia  
   SV Baudouin 19  

4. Nosocomial pneumonia  
   S Ewig, A Torres 24  

5. Acute lung injury and the acute respiratory distress syndrome: definitions and epidemiology  
   K Atabai, MA Matthay 31  

6. The pathogenesis of acute lung injury/acute respiratory distress syndrome  
   GJ Bellingan 38  

7. Critical care management of severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)  
   JT Granton, SE Lapinsky 45  

8. Ventilator induced lung injury  
   T Whitehead, AS Slutsky 52  

9. Ventilatory management of acute lung injury/acute respiratory distress syndrome  
   JJ Cordingley, BF Keogh 60  

10. Non-ventilatory strategies in acute respiratory distress syndrome  
    J Cranshaw, MJD Griffiths, TW Evans 66  

11. Difficult weaning  
    J Goldstone 74  

12. Critical care management of respiratory failure resulting from chronic obstructive pulmonary disease  
    AC Davidson 80  

13. Acute severe asthma  
    P Phipps, CS Garrard 86  

14. The pulmonary circulation and right ventricular failure  
    K McNeil, J Dunning, NW Morrell 93  

15. Thoracic trauma, inhalation injury and post-pulmonary resection lung injury in intensive care  
    ED Moloney, MJD Griffiths, P Goldstraw 99  

16. Illustrative case 1: cystic fibrosis  
    SR Thomas 106  

17. Illustrative case 2: interstitial lung disease  
    AT Jones, RM du Bois, AU Wells 110  

18. Illustrative case 3: pulmonary vasculitis  
    ME Griffith, S Brett 114  

19. Illustrative case 4: neuromusculoskeletal disorders  
    N Hart, AK Simonds 117  

20. Illustrative case 5: HIV associated pneumonia  
    RJ Boyton, DM Mitchell, OM Kon 120  

21. Illustrative case 6: acute chest syndrome of sickle cell anaemia  
    V Mak, SC Davies 125  

22. Illustrative case 7: the assessment and management of massive haemoptysis  
    JL Lordan, A Gascoigne, PA Corris 128  

Index 135
Introduction

M J D Griffiths, T W Evans

The care of the critically ill has changed radically during the past 10 years. Technological advances have improved monitoring, organ support, and data collection, while small steps have been made in the development of drug therapies. Conversely, new challenges (e.g., severe acute respiratory syndrome [SARS], multiple antimicrobial resistance, bioterrorism) continue to arise and public expectations are elevated, sometimes to an unreasonable level. In this book we summarize some of the most important medical advances that have emerged, concentrating particularly on those relevant to the growing numbers of respiratory physicians who pursue a subspecialty interest in this clinical arena.

EVOLUTION OF INTENSIVE CARE MEDICINE AS A SPECIALTY

In Europe intensive care medicine (ICM) has been one of the most recent clinical disciplines to emerge. During a polio epidemic in Denmark in the early 1950s mortality was dramatically reduced by the application of positive pressure ventilation to patients who had developed respiratory failure and by concentrating them in a designated area with medical staff in constant attendance. This focus on airway care and ventilatory management led to the gradual introduction of intensive care units (ICU), principally by anaesthesiologists, throughout Western Europe. The development of sophisticated physiological monitoring equipment in the 1960s facilitated the diagnostic role of the intensivist, extending their skill base beyond anaesthesiology and attracting clinicians trained in general internal medicine into the ICU. Moreover, because respiratory failure was (and still is) the most common cause of ICU admission, pulmonary physicians, particularly in the USA, were frequently involved in patient care.

ARE INTENSIVE CARE UNITS EFFECTIVE?

Does intensive care work and does the way in which it is provided affect patients’ outcomes? A higher rate of attributable mortality has been documented in patients who are refused intensive care, particularly on an emergency basis. Clinical outcome is improved by the conversion of so-called “open” ICU to closed facilities in which patient management is directed primarily by intensive care specialists. Superior organisational practices emphasising strong medical and nursing leadership can also improve outcome. The emergence of intermediate care, high dependency, or step down facilities has attempted to fill the growing gap between the level of care that may be provided in the ICU and that in the general wards. Worryingly, the time at which patients are discharged from ICU in the UK has a demonstrable effect on their outcome. Early identification of patients at risk of death—both before admission and after discharge from the ICU—may decrease mortality. Patients can be identified who have a low risk of mortality and who are likely to benefit from a brief period of more intensive supervision and care. Designated teams that are equipped to transfer critically ill patients between specialist units have a crucial role to play in ensuring that patient care and the use of resources are optimized. Finally, long term follow up of the critically ill as outpatients following discharge from hospital may identify problems of chronic ill health that require active management and rehabilitation.

TRAINING IN INTENSIVE CARE MEDICINE

Improved training of medical and nursing staff and organisational changes have undoubtedly played their part in improving the outcome of critical illness. ICM is now a recognised specialty in two European Union member states, namely Spain and the UK. Where available, training in ICM is of variable duration and is accessible variably to clinicians of differing base specialties. In Spain 5 years of training are required to achieve specialist status, 3 years of which are in ICU. In France, Germany, Greece, and the UK, 2 years of training in ICM are required, in addition to those needed for the base specialty (usually anaesthesiology, respiratory or general internal medicine). In Italy, only anaesthesiologists may practice ICM. There is considerable variation between members states of the European Union regarding the amount of exposure to ICM in the training of pulmonary physicians as a mandatory (M) or optional (O) requirement: France and Greece 6 months (O), Germany 6 months (M, as part of general internal medicine), UK 3 months (O), and Italy and Spain none.

TRAINING IN INTENSIVE CARE MEDICINE IN THE UK

An increasing number of appointments in ICM are now available to trainees in general internal medicine at senior house officer level, usually for a period of 3 months. For specialist registrars, a number of options have emerged. First, in some specialties (e.g. respiratory medicine, infectious diseases) specialist registrars are already encouraged to undertake a period of training in ICM. Second, 6 months of training in anaesthesia plus 6 months of ICM (in addition to 3 months of experience as a senior house officer) in approved programmes confers intermediate accreditation by the Inter-Collegiate Board for Training in ICM (http://www.ics.ac.uk/ibticm_board.html). Finally a further 12 months of experience in recognised units can lead to the award of a Certificate of Completion of Specialist Training (CCST) combined with base specialty. Importantly, up to 12 months of such experience can be substituted for 6 months in general internal medicine (for anaesthesia) and respiratory medicine (for ICM).
ICM within the NHS. Group to provide a blueprint for the future development of intensive care medicine, and 6 for the award of a treble CCST. Programmes are now becoming available in all regions to enable trainees with National Training Numbers from all base specialties to achieve these training requirements and the prescribed competencies in ICM.

THE FUTURE FOR INTENSIVE CARE MEDICINE: A UK PERSPECTIVE

The changing requirements and increased need for provision of intensive care were recognised in the UK in the late 1990s by the Department of Health which commissioned the report entitled “Comprehensive Critical Care” produced by an expert group to provide a blueprint for the future development of ICM within the NHS. A central tenet of the report is the idea that the service should extend to the provision of critical care throughout the hospital, and not merely to patients located within the traditional confines of the ICU. To this end, the adoption of a new classification of illness severity based on dependency rather than location was recommended. Traditionally, the critically ill were defined according to their need for intensive care (delivered at a ratio of one nurse to one patient) and those requiring high dependency care (delivered at a ratio of one nurse to two or more patients). The new classification is based on the severity of the patient’s illness and on the level of care needed (table 1). The report therefore represents a “whole systems” approach encompassing the provision of care, both before and after the acute episode within an integrated system.

To initiate and oversee the implementation of this policy, 29 local “networks” have been established, with an administrative and clinical infrastructure. Networks will be used to pilot national initiatives and enable groups of hospitals to establish locally agreed practices and protocols. Critically ill patients will be transferred between network hospitals if facilities or expertise within a single institution are inadequate to provide the necessary care, thereby obviating the problems associated with moving such patients over long distances to access a suitable bed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1</th>
<th>Proposed classification of critical illness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level 0</td>
<td>Patients whose needs can be met through normal ward care in an acute hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>Patients at risk of their condition deteriorating, or those recently relocated from higher levels of care, whose needs can be met on an acute ward with additional advice and support from the critical care team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 2</td>
<td>Patients requiring more detailed observations or intervention including support for a single failing organ system or postoperative care and those “stepping down” from higher levels of care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 3</td>
<td>Patients requiring advanced respiratory support alone or basic respiratory support together with support of at least two organ systems. This level includes all complex patients requiring support for multiorgan failure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thus, a period of 5 years is needed for intermediate accreditation in ICM plus a CCST in general internal and respiratory medicine, and 6 for the award of a treble CCST. Programmes are now becoming available in all regions to enable trainees with National Training Numbers from all base specialties to achieve these training requirements and the prescribed competencies in ICM.

CONCLUSION

How should the respiratory physician react to these developments? We suggest that an attachment in ICM for all respiratory trainees is necessary. Indeed, specialty recognition and the increased availability of training opportunities should encourage some trainees from respiratory medicine to seek a CCST combined with ICM. Second, we suggest that changes in the organisational and administrative structure of intensive care services heralded by the publication of “Comprehensive Critical Care” are likely to impact most heavily on respiratory physicians. For example, respiratory support services using non-invasive ventilation are particularly attractive in providing both “step up” (from the general wards) and “step down” (from the ICU) facilities. In the USA, respiratory physicians have for a long time been the major providers of critical care. In the UK and the rest of Europe, given appropriate resources and training, the pulmonary physician is ideally suited to become an integral component of the critical care service within all hospitals.

REFERENCES

Patients with acute respiratory failure (ARF) commonly require intensive care, either for mechanical ventilatory support or because adequate investigation of the precipitating illness is impossible without endotracheal intubation. Similarly, respiratory complications such as nosocomial infection, pulmonary oedema, and pneumothorax frequently develop as a complication of life threatening illness. Here we discuss the investigation of the respiratory system of patients who are mechanically ventilated with emphasis on those presenting with ARF and diffuse pulmonary infiltrates.

**STRATEGY FOR INVESTIGATING ACUTE RESPIRATORY FAILURE AND DIFFUSE PULMONARY INFILTRATES**

The syndrome of ARF and diffuse pulmonary infiltrates consistent with pulmonary oedema excluding haemodynamic causes is termed lung injury and can be defined as acute lung injury (ALI) or acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) if the oxygenation defect is sufficiently severe. Identifying the conditions that precipitate ARDS or that cause a pulmonary disease with a different pathology but a similar clinical presentation is crucial because many have specific treatments or prognostic significance (Table 1.1).

A simple scheme for investigating ARF and diffuse pulmonary infiltrates is presented in Figure 1.1, although investigations not specifically targeting the lung may be equally important (e.g. serological tests in the diagnosis of diffuse alveolar haemorrhage). Many patients develop ARDS while they are being treated for presumed community-acquired pneumonia. High permeability pulmonary oedema is diagnosed by excluding cardiac and haemodynamic causes because there is no simple and reproducible bedside method for assessing permeability of the alveolar–capillary membrane (for review). In the majority of cases major cardiac pathology may be excluded on the basis of the history, electrocardiogram, and the results of an echocardiogram or data from a pulmonary artery catheter. Rarely, unsuspected intermittent haemodynamic compromise (caused, for example, by ischaemia with or without associated mitral regurgitation or dynamic left ventricular outflow tract obstruction) may be detected at the bedside by continuous cardiac output monitoring with (stress) echocardiography (Fig 1.2).

Where possible we perform thoracic computed tomography (CT), bronchoscopy, and bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) in patients with lung injury in order to diagnose underlying pulmonary conditions and their complications (e.g. abscess, empyema, pneumothorax; Fig 1.3). Repeating these investigations should be considered at any time it is felt that the patient is not recovering as predicted. Occasionally, in patients who fail to improve or those whose primary cause of ARF remains obscure, histological analysis of lung tissue may be required. CT may help to guide the operator in determining the sites to biopsy and, where the pathology is bronchocentric, the choice between surgical and transbronchial lung biopsy (TBB). In our practice, lung biopsies in selected patients have revealed a variety of pulmonary pathologies that have altered management, including herpetic pneumonia, organizing pneumonia, bronchoalveolar cell carcinoma, and disseminated malignancy.

**BRONCHOSCOPY**

The British Thoracic Society recommends that fibreoptic bronchoscopy (FOB) should be available for use in all intensive care units (ICUs). In patients presenting with ARF of unknown cause, FOB is used primarily as a means of collecting samples in patients who have failed to respond to first line antimicrobial therapy or those in whom an atypical micro-organism or non-infectious aetiology is suspected. Alternative indications for FOB in the ICU include the relief of endobronchial obstruction, the facilitation of endotracheal tube placement, and the localization of a site of trauma or of a source of bleeding (see chapter 22).
Bronchoscopy procedure in patients who are mechanically ventilated

The inspired oxygen concentration (FiO₂) should be raised to 1.0 before the bronchoscope is introduced through a modified catheter mount incorporating an airtight seal around the suction port of an endotracheal or tracheostomy tube. The resultant increased resistance to expiration results in gas trapping and increased positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP). An 8 mm endotracheal tube is the smallest that should be used with an adult instrument because with smaller diameter tubes the level of PEEP may exceed 20 cm H₂O. Paediatric bronchoscopes may be passed through smaller endotracheal tubes at the cost of a smaller visual field and significantly less suction capability. In patients with ARF requiring mechanical ventilation, adequate sedation and paralysis facilitate not only effective oxygenation but also obviate the risk of damage to the instrument should the patient bite the endotracheal tube. Finally, limiting the duration of instrumentation by intermittently withdrawing the bronchoscope during the operation helps to maintain adequate alveolar ventilation and to limit the rise in PaCO₂ which may be particularly relevant in those with head trauma. When prolonged instrumentation of the airway is expected—for example, during bronchoscopic surveillance of percutaneous tracheostomy—monitoring of end tidal CO₂ is recommended.

Complications are few. Malignant cardiac arrhythmia occurred in about 2% of cases in an early series in which FOB was performed in patients soon after cardiopulmonary arrest. In a subsequent series no serious complications were reported. Specimen retrieval techniques have been reviewed recently elsewhere. There is little difference in sensitivity and specificity between FOB directed BAL and protected specimen brush (PSB) in establishing a microbiological diagnosis. In order to obtain samples for cellular analysis (table 1.2), repeated aliquots of 50–60 ml to a total of 250–300 ml should be instilled, of which about 50% should be retrieved. In ventilated patients a lower volume is commonly used to reduce ventilator disturbance, although there is no standard recommendation. Bacteriological analysis requires collection of only 5 ml fluid, although larger volumes are more commonly used. Blind (non-bronchoscopic) transbrachial aspiration is routine practice in all ventilated patients to provide upper airway toilet. Blind sampling of lower respiratory tract secretions (aspiration or mini-BAL using various catheter or brush devices to obtain specimens for quantitative cultures) has been extensively examined as an alternative diagnostic method in cases of suspected ventilator associated pneumonia (VAP). Generally, these have compared favourably with bronchoscope guided methods in trials on critically ill patients.

Transbronchial (TBB) versus surgical lung (SLB) biopsy

TBB carries a substantial risk of pneumothorax which afflicts 8–14% of ventilated patients. For this reason, TBB is rarely performed in these circumstances except in patients after lung transplantation where the sensitivity for detection of acute or chronic rejection is 70–90%, with a specificity of 90–100% when performed in an appropriate clinical context. The Lung Rejection Study Group recommends collecting at least...

Figure 1.1 Suggested respiratory investigations in patients with acute respiratory failure (ARF) and diffuse pulmonary infiltrates. BAL = bronchoalveolar lavage.

Figure 1.2 Radiology of a case of haemodynamic pulmonary oedema and histological non-specific interstitial pneumonia masquerading as community-acquired pneumonia and ARDS. Prominent septal lines (upper panel) and large pleural effusions (lower panel) suggest a cardiac cause of pulmonary oedema in this man aged 30 years of no fixed abode. Having failed to respond to antibiotics and corticosteroids, he improved following two vessel coronary angioplasty, mitral valve replacement with one coronary artery bypass graft, and finally a further course of high dose steroids. The diagnosis of ischaemic mitral valve regurgitation was made by stress echocardiography. Subsequently, pulmonary diagnosis was made by an open lung biopsy taken at the time of his cardiac surgery.
five pieces of lung parenchyma to get an adequate sample of small bronchioles and to diagnose bronchiolitis obliterans. Widespread pulmonary infiltrates developing within 72 hours of lung transplantation are more likely to represent alveolar oedema caused by ischaemia-reperfusion injury than rejection or infection. A recent study retrospectively examined the strategy of performing BAL and TBB simultaneously rather than as staged procedures in mechanically ventilated patients with unexplained pulmonary infiltrates. Pneumothorax occurred in nine of 38 patients, six requiring intercostal tube drainage; four out of 38 suffered significant bleeding that was self limiting or terminated with instillation of adrenaline. Diagnostic yields were estimated at 74% for BAL/TBB, whereas those for TBB and BAL alone were 63% and 29%, respectively. Patients in the later phases of ARDS represented 11 of 38 patients and experienced a relatively high incidence of complications and lower diagnostic value, in part because BAL alone could adequately diagnose infection.

A 10 year retrospective review of 24 mechanically ventilated patients undergoing SLB found that a diagnosis was made histologically in 46%. Intraoperative complications were generally well tolerated, although 17% had persistent air leaks and two patients died as a consequence of the procedure. Complication rates in other series have been lower and the estimates of diagnostic usefulness have been considerably higher. For example, in 27 patients with ARF, persistent air leak occurred in six following SLB but there were no perioperative deaths. In a retrospective review of 27 OLBs in patients with ARF, persistent air leak occurred in six but there were no perioperative deaths. In a retrospective series of 80 patients, many of whom were immunosuppressed, eight had a persistent air leak with one perioperative myocardial infarction.

### Bronchoscopy in specific conditions

#### Pneumonia

The microbiological yield from bronchoscopy is low (13–48%) in ventilated patients with community acquired pneumonia (CAP), possibly because of the frequency of antibiotic administration before admission to the ICU. By contrast, patients who have been mechanically ventilated for several days generally have extensive colonisation even of the lower respiratory tract. In these patients with suspected VAP, negative microbiological culture predicts the absence of pneumonia but false positives arise frequently. Invasive investigation has not been shown in patients with either CAP or VAP to alter treatment and outcome significantly and may be reserved for patients failing first line treatment or those from whom specimens are not readily obtainable by blind tracheobronchial aspiration (see chapters 3 and 4). Patients with common causes of immunosuppression, such as the acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) and malignancy, have a poor prognosis when admitted to the ICU with ARF (see chapter 20). For example, bone marrow transplant recipients requiring mechanical ventilation have an in-hospital mortality in excess of 95%. Although these data have deterred referral of such patients to the ICU, temporary endotracheal intubation may be required for sedation and FOB to be performed safely.

The sensitivity of BAL in the detection of AIDS related pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP) is high (86–97%). Fewer organisms may be recovered by BAL from patients using nebulised pentamidine prophylaxis or with non-AIDS related PCP but the yield may be increased by taking samples from two lobes and targeting the area of greatest radiological abnormality. Cytomegalovirus (CMV) pneumonia is a common cause of death after transplantation, particularly in recipients of allogeneic bone marrow and lung grafts. The definitive diagnosis of CMV pneumonitis is made by the finding of typical cytomegacillary cells with inclusions on BAL or TBB, the latter being more sensitive. Detection of early antigen fluorescent foci (DEAFF) performed on virus cultured from BAL fluid allows a presumptive diagnosis to be made.

Invasive pulmonary aspergillosis occurs predominantly in neutropenic patients in whom early diagnosis and treatment are essential. The incidence of aspergillosis may be rising in this patient group, probably secondary to more aggressive chemotherapy regimens and more widespread use of prophylactic broad spectrum antibiotics and antifungal agents. The sensitivity of BAL is high in the presence of diffuse radiological changes. A positive culture has a specificity of 90% but results may take up to 3 weeks. The sensitivity of culture alone (23–40%) is greatly increased by the addition of microscopic examination for hyphae (58–64%). Galactomannan antigen testing of blood provides an early warning of infection and may prove useful in BAL fluid.

### Respiratory failure due to non-infectious lung disease

Patients presenting with ARF and pulmonary infiltrates are generally assumed to have pneumonia and further investigation is prompted by treatment failure. Analysis of BAL fluid may distinguish the differential diagnoses and/or pulmonary risk factors for ARDS, many of which have specific treatments (table 1.1). The BAL white cell differential provides information that may be diagnostically helpful (table 1.2). A moderate eosinophilia (>15%) implicates a relatively small number of conditions including Churg-Strauss syndrome, AIDS related infection, eosinophilic pneumonia, drug induced lung disease, or helminthic infection.

Apart from helping to uncover a cause or differential diagnosis for ARDS, the BAL fluid cell profile may give prognostic information. In patients with ARDS secondary to sepsis a BAL...
fluid neutrophilia had adverse prognostic significance while a higher macrophage count was associated with a better outcome. The fibroproliferative phase of ARDS may be amenable to treatment with steroids and it is recommended that either BAL or PSB is performed before starting treatment to exclude infection.

For patients with suspected or confirmed ARDS a sensitive and specific marker of disease would have several benefits. Firstly, it might improve the ability to predict which patients with risk factors develop ARDS so that potentially protective measures could be assessed and developed. Secondly, it may help to quantify the severity of disease and to predict complications such as fibrosis and superadded infection. Most studies have involved assays on plasma samples or BAL fluid. Analysis may provide information about soluble inflammatory mediators and by-products of inflammation (such as shed adhesion molecules, elastase, peroxynitrite) in the distal airways and air spaces. Analysis of samples from patients at risk has revealed increased alveolar levels of the potent neutrophil chemokine interleukin 8 (IL-8) in those patients who progress to ARDS. The development of established fibrosis conveys a poor prognosis in ARDS. Type III procollagen peptide is present from the day of tracheal intubation in the pulmonary oedema fluid of patients with incipient lung injury, and the concentration correlates with mortality. Less invasive methods of sampling distal lung lining fluid using exhaled breath or exhaled breath condensates are being examined in critically ill patients. The assay of potential biomarkers is currently used exclusively as a research tool.

**RADIOLOGY**

**Chest radiography**

The cost effectiveness of a daily chest radiograph in the mechanically ventilated patient has been debated but is recommended by the American College of Radiology based on series highlighting the incidence (15–18%) of unsuspected findings leading directly to changes in management. Film acquisition in the ICU is technically demanding but guidelines have been published. Digital imaging techniques permit the use of lower radiation doses and manipulate images to produce, in effect, a standard exposure as well as an edge enhanced image to facilitate visualisation of, for example, intravenous lines and pneumothoraces.

**Endotracheal tubes and central venous catheters**

A radiograph is recommended after placement or repositioning of all central venous catheters, pleural drains, nasogastric, and endotracheal tubes. The tip of the endotracheal tube may move up to 4 cm with neck flexion and extension, and the end should be 5–7 cm from the carina or project on a plain chest radiograph to the level of T3–T4. Tracheal rupture may be reflected in radiological evidence of overdilatation of the endotracheal tube or tracheostomy balloon to a greater diameter than that of the trachea. Surprisingly, the presentation of this potentially catastrophic complication is often gradual, with surgical emphysema and pneumomediastinum developing over 24 hours.

Central venous catheters should be positioned in the superior vena cava (SVC) at the level of or slightly above the aygoss vein. Caudal to this, the SVC lies within the pericardium making tamponade likely if the atrial wall is perforated. Positioning of left sided lines with their ends abutting the wall of the SVC is a risk factor for perforation. Encroachment of lines into the atrium may cause arrhythmia and be associated with a higher incidence of endocarditis. The ideal radiological placement of pulmonary artery catheters has not been studied. To minimize the risk of inflating or perforating the balloon should be sited routinely in the largest diameter pulmonary artery that will provide a wedge trace on inflation, and placement should be reviewed frequently to prevent migration of the catheter tip more away from the hilum.

**Radiographic appearances in ARF**

The radiographic appearance of ARDS is a cornerstone of its diagnosis (see chapter 5). However, distinguishing between cardiogenic and high permeability pulmonary oedema on radiographic signs alone is unreliable. The cardiac size and vascular pedicle width reflect the haemodynamic state of the patient, but this sign relies on exact and often unachievable patient positioning. Pleural effusions and Kerley’s lines reflecting lymphatic engorgement are not characteristic of ARDS because the high protein content and viscosity of the oedema fluid prevents it from spreading into the peripheral interstitial and pleural spaces. Air bronchograms are seen in up to one third of cases as the airways remain dry in ARDS, thereby contrasting with the surrounding parenchyma.

In contrast to hydrostatic pulmonary oedema, the radiographic signs of ARDS are frequently not visible on the plain chest radiograph for 24 hours after the onset of symptoms. Early changes comprise patchy ill defined densities that become confluent to form ground glass shadowing. In ventilated patients air space shadowing commonly results from pneumonia or atelectasis; other causes are ARDS, haemorrhage, and lung contusion. The detection and quantification of pleural fluid by the supine chest radiograph is inaccurate.

**Thoracic ultrasound**

The presence of fluid within the pleural space has an adverse effect on ventilation-perfusion matching; removal improves oxygenation and pulmonary compliance. Drainage may be performed safely by ultrasound guided thoracocentesis in the ventilated patient.

**Thoracic computed tomography (CT)**

Transportation to and monitoring of a critically ill patient for CT scanning involves a team effort from medical, nursing, and technical support staff. There are no published data describing the risks and benefits of this investigation in a well defined group of critically ill patients. However, in a retrospective review of 108 thoracic CT scans performed on patients in a general ICU, at least one new clinically significant finding (most commonly abscess, malignancy, unsuspected pneumonia, or pleural effusion) was identified in 30% of cases and in 22% led to a change in management. The normal standards and precautions for transporting critically ill patients apply, including a period of stabilisation on the transport ventilator prior to movement. Despite the added risk of complications such as pneumothorax, haemodynamic instability and lung derecruitment associated with transportation, we routinely scan patients with ARDS if their gas exchange on the transport ventilator is acceptable. Portable CT scanners provide mediastinal images of comparable quality to those obtained in the radiology department, but the images of the lung parenchyma are inferior.

**Thoracic CT in specific conditions**

**ARDS**

Insight into the nature of ARDS has been obtained from CT scanning, for example, by defining the disease distribution and demonstrating ventilator induced lung injury (see chapter 8). CT scans of the lung parenchyma show that the diffuse opacification on the plain radiograph is not homogenous; classically, there is a gradient of decreasing aeration passing from ventral to dorsal dependent regions. Tidal volume is therefore directed exclusively to the overlying anterior regions which are consequently overdistended. This may account for the anterior distribution of reticular damage seen on CT scans in survivors. The improvement in oxygenation of patients with
ARDS following prone positioning suggests improved ventilation-perfusion matching. However, microsphere CT studies in animal models of ARDS have failed to demonstrate redirection of perfusion with prone positioning; redirection of ventilation to the consolidated dorsal regions may therefore be the mechanism responsible.

Recovery from ARDS is commonly complicated by pneumothoraces which are often loculated. If a pneumothorax does not extend to the lateral thoracic wall, it will not be readily apparent on a chest radiograph. Its presence may be inferred from a range of indirect signs such as a vague radiolucency or undue clarity of the diaphragm, but this gives no information as to whether the collection of air is located anteriorly or posteriorly. Similarly, empyema and abscess formation may cause treatment failure in patients with pneumonia and ARDS and are not infrequently missed on the plain film (fig 1.3). CT guided percutaneous drainage may be required for loculated pneumothoraces and may be an alternative to surgery for lung abscesses.

Pulmonary embolus
Massive pulmonary embolus is a treatable cause of rapid cardiorespiratory deterioration which is frequently not diagnosed before death (see chapter 14). Radionuclide scanning has a long image acquisition time and assays for detecting D-dimers are unduly sensitive in this setting, making both unsuitable for the critically ill patient. CT pulmonary angiography is the
investigation of choice and may provide an alternative diagnosis to account for the presentation.

**Trauma**

Routine CT scanning of all victims of serious trauma uncovers lesions (pneumothorax, haemothorax, pulmonary contusion) not detected on clinical examination and plain radiography. However, there is no evidence to suggest that a better patient outcome follows routine scanning. Different trauma centres favour aggressive and conservative management of small pneumothoraces in the ventilated patient.

**LUNG FUNCTION**

Formal assessment of lung function is most commonly required for patients who experience difficulty in weaning where measurements of peak flow, vital capacity, and respiratory muscle strength may be useful (see chapters 11 and 19). An airtight connection between the endotracheal tube and a hand held spirometer can give accurate and reproducible results. A vital capacity of 10 ml/kg is usually required to sustain spontaneous ventilation. If respiratory muscle weakness is suspected, measurements should be performed sitting and supine. A supine reduction of 25% or more indicates diaphragm weakness. Direct measurement of diaphragm strength is useful where borderline results are obtained from spirometric testing, in uncooperative patients, or in those with lung disease that impairs spirometric measurements.

Transdiaphragmatic pressure, an index of the strength of diaphragmatic contractility, is measured by peroral passage of balloon manometers into the oesophagus and stomach. A volitional measurement is made by asking the patient to sniff forcefully from functional residual capacity. A non-volitional measurement can be made reproducibly by magnetic stimulation of the phrenic nerves using a coil directly applied to the skin of the neck. A low maximal inspiratory pressure (PImax) predicts failure to wean, although it is insensitive in predicting success.

In the mechanically ventilated patient gas exchange and ventilation are assessed routinely by arterial blood gas analysis and continuous oxygen saturation monitoring. Refractory hypoxia that is characteristic of ARDS is almost entirely caused by intrapulmonary shunting. Oxygenation is quantified in the American-European Consensus Conference (AECC) definition of ARDS and ALI by the ratio of the arterial partial pressure and the inspired oxygen concentration (Pao2/Fio2). This initial value does not predict survival but is a reasonable predictor of shunt fraction and has epidemiological importance as it is used to distinguish patients with severe (ARDS) and less severe (ALI) lung injury. The Pao2/Fio2 ratio is simple to calculate but does not take into account other factors that affect oxygenation such as the mean airway pressure (mPaw). The oxygenation index (OI = mPaw x Fio2 x 100/Pao2) benefits from including this variable; similarly, the respiratory severity index (P0.5alveolar − P0.5arterial/ P0.5alveolar + 0.014PEEP) is more cumbersome but the value in the first 24 hours did distinguish survivors and non-survivors in a study of 56 consecutive patients with ARDS defined using the AECC criteria. As a compromise the Pao2/Fio2 ratio may be calculated at a standardised level of PEEP.

Assessment of respiratory physiology has undergone a recent resurgence as novel adjuncts to ventilator therapy (e.g. prone positioning and inhaled vasodilators) have been investigated and the importance of mitigating ventilator induced lung injury has been recognised. Most ventilators continuously display airway pressures, delivered and exhaled volumes, and compliance. The compliance of the respiratory system is defined by the relationship:

\[
\text{tidal volume/plateau pressure} = \text{PEEP} \times \text{cm H}_2\text{O}
\]

This gives the total compliance of the lung and chest wall assuming that the patient is making no spontaneous respiratory effort. Values are commonly halved or lower in ARDS (normal range 50–80 ml/cm H2O), although measurement of this variable is not required by the standard definition. Studying pressure-volume curves of patients with ARDS highlighted the risk of overdistension at what would be considered a "normal" tidal volume, and the results of the recent ARDS network study confirmed the benefit of ventilation at a restricted volume. While the optimum balance between PEEP and FiO2 and the role of the pressure-volume curve in setting the optimum level of PEEP remain to be determined, we cannot recommend that generating pressure-volume curves in patients with lung injury is required other than for research.

**SUMMARY**

When investigating patients with ARF and pulmonary infiltrates, one must achieve a balance between the necessity of rapid diagnosis and the early instigation of effective therapy, against the potential harm caused by invasive techniques in patients with already limited reserves. Because of the pressure on intensive care beds in the UK, our facilities and expertise in providing temporary support are probably under-used in the investigation of such cases before mechanical ventilation is mandatory. We suggest a scheme for the investigation of patients presenting with ARF and discuss the effects of mechanical ventilation and critical illness on commonly used investigations of the respiratory system.

**REFERENCES**


Pulmonary investigations for acute respiratory failure


10 Respiratory Management in Critical Care


Although traditionally interested in conditions affecting gas exchange within the lungs, the respiratory physician is increasingly, and appropriately, involved in the care of critically ill patients and therefore should be concerned with systemic as well as pulmonary oxygen transport. Oxygen is the substrate that cells use in the greatest quantity and upon which aerobic metabolism and cell integrity depend. Since the tissues have no storage system for oxygen, a continuous supply at a rate that matches changing metabolic requirements is necessary to maintain aerobic metabolism and normal cellular function. Failure of oxygen supply to meet metabolic needs is the feature common to all forms of circulatory failure or “shock”. Prevention, early identification, and correction of tissue hypoxia are therefore necessary skills in managing the critically ill patient and this requires an understanding of oxygen transport, delivery, and consumption.

**OXYGEN TRANSPORT**

Oxygen transport describes the process by which oxygen from the atmosphere is supplied to the tissues as shown in fig 2.1 in which typical values are quoted for a healthy 75 kg individual. The phases in this process are either convective or diffusive: (1) the convective or “bulk flow” phases are alveolar ventilation and transport in the blood from the pulmonary to the systemic microcirculation; these are energy requiring stages that rely on work performed by the respiratory and cardiac “pumps”; and (2) the diffusive phases are the movement of oxygen from alveolus to pulmonary capillary and from systemic capillary to cell: these stages are passive and depend on the gradient of oxygen partial pressures, the tissue capillary density (which determines diffusion distance), and the ability of the cell to take up and use oxygen.

This chapter will not consider oxygen transport within the lungs but will focus on transport from the heart to non-pulmonary tissues, dealing specifically with global and regional oxygen delivery, the relationship between oxygen delivery and consumption, and some of the recent evidence relating to the uptake and utilisation of oxygen at the tissue and cellular level.

**OXYGEN DELIVERY**

Global oxygen delivery (Do2) is the total amount of oxygen delivered to the tissues per minute irrespective of the distribution of blood flow. Under resting conditions with normal distribution of cardiac output it is more than adequate to meet the total oxygen requirements of the tissues (Vo2) and ensure that aerobic metabolism is maintained.

Recognition of inadequate global Do2 can be difficult in the early stages because the clinical features are often non-specific. Progressive metabolic acidosis, hyperlactataemia, and falling mixed venous oxygen saturation (SvO2), as well as organ specific features such as oliguria and impaired level of consciousness, suggest inadequate Do2. Serial lactate measurements can indicate both progression of the underlying problem and the response to treatment. Raised lactate levels (>2 mmol/l) may be caused by either increased production or reduced hepatic metabolism. Both mechanisms frequently apply in the critically ill patient since a marked reduction in Do2 produces global tissue ischaemia and impairs liver function.

Table 2.1 illustrates the calculation of Do2 from the oxygen content of arterial blood (CaO2) and cardiac output (Qt) with examples for a normal subject and a patient presenting with hypoxaemia, anaemia, and a reduced Qt. The effects of providing an increased inspired oxygen concentration, red blood cell transfusion, and increasing cardiac output are shown. This emphasises that: (1) Do2 may be compromised by anaemia, oxygen desaturation, and a low cardiac output, either singly or in combination; (2) global Do2 depends on oxygen saturation rather than partial pressure and there is therefore little extra benefit in increasing PaO2 above 9 kPa since, due to the sigmoid shape of the oxyhaemoglobin dissociation curve, over 90% of haemoglobin (Hb) is already saturated with oxygen at that level. This does not apply to the diffusive component of oxygen transport that does depend on the gradient of oxygen partial pressure.

Although blood transfusion to polycythaemic levels might seem an appropriate way to increase Do2, blood viscosity increases markedly above 100 g/l. This impairs flow and oxygen delivery, particularly in smaller vessels and when the perfusion pressure is reduced, and will therefore exacerbate tissue hypoxia. Recent evidence suggests that even the traditionally accepted Hb concentration for critically ill patients of approximately 100 g/l may be too high since an improved outcome was observed if Hb was maintained between 70 and 90 g/l with the exception of patients with coronary artery disease in whom a level of 100 g/l remains appropriate. With the appropriate Hb achieved by transfusion, and since the oxygen saturation (SaO2) can usually be maintained above 90% with supplemental oxygen (or if necessary by intubation and mechanical ventilation), cardiac output is the variable that is most often manipulated to achieve the desired global Do2 levels.

**Abbreviations:** SaO2, oxygen saturation [%]; Po2, oxygen partial pressure (kPa); PaO2, inspired Po2; PaCO2, mixed expired Po2; PecO2, mixed expired Po2; PaCO2, alveolar Po2; PacO2, arterial Po2; PacO2, arterial So2; Svo2, mixed venous So2; Qt, cardiac output; Hb, haemoglobin; CaO2, arterial O2 content; CvO2, mixed venous O2 content; Vo2, oxygen consumption; VCO2, CO2 production; OR, oxygen return; Do2, oxygen delivery; Vt/e, minute volume; inspiratory/expiratory.
returns to the lungs and the mixed venous saturation \((SvO_2)\) well trained athlete. The oxygen not extracted by the tissues which increases to 70–80% during maximal exercise in the is approximately 250 ml/min with an OER of 25% (fig 2.1),

OXYGEN CONSUMPTION

Global oxygen consumption \((VO_2)\) measures the total amount of oxygen consumed by the tissues per minute. It can be measured directly from inspired and mixed expired oxygen concentrations and expired minute volume, or derived from the cardiac output \((Qt)\) and arterial and venous oxygen concentrations and expired minute volume, or derived from inspired and mixed expired \(PO_2\), \(PCO_2\) = mixed expired \(PCO_2\); \(PAO_2\), \(PVO_2\) = alveolar \(PO_2\).

OXYGEN CONSUMPTION

Global oxygen consumption \((VO_2)\) measures the total amount of oxygen consumed by the tissues per minute. It can be measured directly from inspired and mixed expired oxygen concentrations and expired minute volume, or derived from the cardiac output \((Qt)\) and arterial and venous oxygen contents:

\[ VO_2 = Qt \times (CaO_2 - CVO_2) \]

Directly measured \(VO_2\) is slightly greater than the derived value that does not include alveolar oxygen consumption. It is important to use the directly measured rather than the derived value when studying the relationship between \(VO_2\) and \(DO_2\) to avoid problems of mathematical linkage.

The amount of oxygen consumed \((VO_2)\) as a fraction of oxygen delivery \((DO_2)\) defines the oxygen extraction ratio (OER):

\[ OER = VO_2/DO_2 \]

In a normal 75 kg adult undertaking routine activities, \(VO_2\) is approximately 250 ml/min with an OER of 25% (fig 2.1), which increases to 70–80% during maximal exercise in the well trained athlete. The oxygen not extracted by the tissues returns to the lungs and the mixed venous saturation \((SvO_2)\) measured in the pulmonary artery represents the pooled venous saturation from all organs. It is influenced by changes in both global \(DO_2\) and \(VO_2\) and, provided the microcirculation and the mechanisms for cellular oxygen uptake are intact, a value above 70% indicates that global \(DO_2\) is adequate.

A mixed venous sample is necessary because the saturation of venous blood from different organs varies considerably. For example, the hepatic venous saturation is usually 40–50% but the renal venous saturation may exceed 80%, reflecting the considerable difference in the balance between the metabolic requirements of these organs and their individual oxygen deliveries.

CLINICAL FACTORS AFFECTING METABOLIC RATE AND OXYGEN CONSUMPTION

The cellular metabolic rate determines \(VO_2\). The metabolic rate increases during physical activity, with shivering, hyperthermia and raised sympathetic drive (pain, anxiety). Similarly, certain drugs such as adrenaline and feeding regimens containing excessive glucose increase \(VO_2\). Mechanical ventilation eliminates the metabolic cost of breathing which, although normally less than 5% of the total \(VO_2\), may rise to 30% in the catabolic critically ill patient with respiratory distress. It allows the patient to be sedated, given analgesia and, if necessary, paralysed, further reducing \(VO_2\).

Table 2.1 Relative effects of changes in \(PACO_2\), haemoglobin (Hb), and cardiac output (Qt) on oxygen delivery (DO2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(FIO_2)</th>
<th>(PACO_2) (kPa)</th>
<th>(Sao_2) (%)</th>
<th>(Hb) (g/l)</th>
<th>Dissolved (O_2) (ml/l)</th>
<th>(CaO_2) (ml/l)</th>
<th>(Qt) (l/min)</th>
<th>(DO_2) (ml/min)</th>
<th>(DO_2) (%) change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal*</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient†</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↑(FIO_2)</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↑(Hb)</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↑(Qt)</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>568</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ \text{DO}_2 = \text{Qt} \times \text{DO}_2/\text{Qt} \]

\[ \text{DO}_2 = \text{Qt} \times \text{DO}_2/\text{Qt} = \text{Qt} \times (\text{Hb} - \text{Sao}_2)/(1.34) + (\text{Paco}_2 \times 0.23) \text{ ml/l} \]

where \(FIO_2\) = fractional inspired oxygen concentration; \(\text{Paco}_2\), \(\text{Saco}_2\), \(\text{CaO}_2\) = partial pressure, saturation and content of oxygen in arterial blood; \(\text{Qt}\) = cardiac output; 1.34 ml is the volume of oxygen carried by 1 g of 100% saturated Hb; \(\text{Paco}_2\) (kPa) = 0.23 is the amount of oxygen in physical solution in 1 l of blood, which is less than <3% of total \(\text{CaO}_2\) for normal \(\text{Paco}_2\) (ie <14 kPa). *Normal 75 kg subject at rest. †Patient with hypoaemia, anaemia, reduced cardiac output, and evidence of global tissue hypoxia. ‡Change in \(DO_2\) expressed as a percentage of the preceding value.
-controlled studies finally showed that there was no benefit and possibly harm from applying this approach in patients with established “shock.” Interestingly, these studies also found that those patients who neither increased their DO2 spontaneously nor in response to treatment had a particularly poor outcome. This suggested that patients with late “shock” had “poor physiological reserve” with myocardial and other organ failure caused by fundamental cellular dysfunction. These changes would be unresponsive to Shoemaker’s goals that had been successful in “early” shock. Indeed, one might predict that, in patients with the increased endothelial permeability and myocardial dysfunction that typifies late “shock”, aggressive fluid loading would produce widespread tissue oedema impairing both pulmonary gas exchange and tissue oxygen diffusion. The reported increase in mortality associated with the use of pulmonary artery catheters may reflect the adverse effects of their use in attempting to achieve supranormal levels of DO2.

SHOULD GOAL DIRECTED THERAPY BE ABANDONED?

Recent studies examining perioperative “optimisation” in patients, many of whom also had significant pre-existing cardiopulmonary dysfunction, have confirmed that identifying and treating volume depletion and poor myocardial performance at an early stage is beneficial. This was the message from Shoemaker’s studies 20 years ago, but unfortunately it was overinterpreted and applied to inappropriate patient populations causing the confusion that has only recently been resolved. Thus, adequate volume replacement in relatively volume depleted perioperative patients is entirely appropriate. However, the strategy of using aggressive fluid replacement and vasoactive agents in pursuit of supranormal “global” goals does not improve survival in patients presenting late with incipient or established multiorgan failure.

This saga highlights the difference between “early” and “late” shock and the concept well known to traumatologists as the “golden hour”. Of the various forms of circulatory shock, two distinct groups can be defined: those with hypovolaemic, cardiogenic, and obstructive forms of shock (group 1) have the primary problem of a low cardiac output impairing DO2; those with septic, anaphylactic, and neurogenic shock (group 2) have a problem with the distribution of DO2 between and within organs—that is, abnormalities of regional DO2 in addition to any impairment of global DO2. Sepsis is also associated with cellular/metabolic defects that impair the uptake and utilisation of oxygen by cells. Prompt effective treatment of “early” shock may prevent progression to “late” shock and organ failure. In group 1 the peripheral circulatory response is physiologically appropriate and, if the global problem is corrected by intravenous fluid administration, improvement in myocardial function or relief of the obstruction, the peripheral tissue consequences of prolonged inadequacy of global DO2 will not develop. However, if there is delay in instituting effective treatment, then shock becomes established and organ failure supervenes. Once this late stage has been reached, manipulation of the “global” or convective components of DO2 alone will be ineffective. Global DO2 should nonetheless be maintained by fluid resuscitation to correct hypovolaemia and inotropes to support myocardial dysfunction.

REGIONAL OXYGEN DELIVERY

Hypoxia in specific organs is often the result of disordered regional distribution of blood flow both between and within organs rather than inadequacy of global DO2. The importance of regional factors in determining tissue oxygenation should not be surprising since, under physiological conditions of metabolic demand such as exercise, alterations in local vascular tone ensure the necessary increase in regional and overall
blood flow—that is, "consumption drives delivery". It is therefore important to distinguish between global and regional \(\text{DO}_2\) when considering the cause of tissue hypoxia in specific organs. Loss of normal autoregulation in response to humoral factors during sepsis or prolonged hypotension can cause severe "shunting" and tissue hypoxia despite both global \(\text{DO}_2\) and \(\text{SvO}_2\) being normal or raised. In these circumstances, improving peripheral distribution and cellular oxygen utilisation will be more effective than further increasing global \(\text{DO}_2\). Regional and microcircular distribution of cardiac output is determined by a complex interaction of endothelial, neural, metabolic, and pharmacological factors. In health, many of these processes have been intensively investigated and well reviewed elsewhere.

Until recently the endothelium had been perceived as an inert barrier but it is now realised that it has a profound effect on vascular homeostasis, acting as a dynamic interface between the underlying tissue and the many components of flowing blood. In concert with other vessel wall cells, the endothelium not only maintains a physical barrier between the blood and body tissues but also modulates leucocyte migration, angiogenesis, coagulation, and vascular tone through the release of both constrictor (endothelin) and relaxing factors (nitric oxide, prostacyclin, adenosine). The differential release of such factors has an important role in controlling the distribution of regional blood flow during both health and critical illness. The endothelium is both exposed to and itself produces many inflammatory mediators that influence vascular tone and other aspects of endothelial function. For example, nitric oxide production is increased in septic shock following induction of nitric oxide synthase in the vessel wall. Inhibition of nitric oxide synthesis increased vascular resistance and systemic blood pressure in patients with septic shock, but no outcome benefit could be demonstrated. Similarly, capillary microthrombosis following endothelial damage and neutrophil activation is probably a more common cause of local tissue hypoxia than arterial hypoxaemia (fig 2.3). Manipulation of the coagulation system, for example, using activated protein C may reduce this thrombotic tendency and improve outcome as shown in a recent randomised, placebo controlled, multicentre study in patients with severe sepsis.

The clinical implications of disordered regional blood flow distribution vary considerably with the underlying pathological process. In the critically ill patient splanchnic perfusion is reduced by the release of endogenous vasoconstrictors and the gut mucosa is frequently further compromised by failure to maintain enteral nutrition. In sepsis and experimental endotoxaemia the oxygen extraction ratio is reduced and the critical \(\text{DO}_2\) increased to a greater extent in splanchnic tissue than in skeletal muscle. This tendency to splanchnic ischaemia renders the gut mucosa "leaky", allowing translocation of endotoxin and possibly bacteria into the portal circulation. This toxic load may overwhelm the patient's compensatory capacity producing widespread endothelial damage. Treatment aimed at maintaining or improving splanchnic perfusion reduces the incidence of multiple organ failure and mortality. Although increasing global \(\text{DO}_2\) may improve blood flow to regionally hypoxic tissues by raising blood flow through all capillary beds, this is an inefficient process and, if achieved using vasoactive drugs, may adversely affect regional distribution, particularly to the kidneys and splanchnic beds. The potent \(\alpha\) receptor agonist noradrenaline is frequently used to counteract sepsis induced vasodilatation and hypotension. The increase in blood pressure may improve perfusion to certain hypoxia sensitive vital organs but may also compromise blood flow to other organs, particularly the splanchnic bed. The role of vasodilators is less well defined: tissue perfusion is frequently already compromised by systemic hypotension and a reduced systemic vascular resistance, and their effect on regional distribution is unpredictable and may impair blood flow to vital organs despite increasing global \(\text{DO}_2\). In a group of critically ill patients prostacyclin increased both \(\text{DO}_2\) and \(\text{V}_{\text{O}}_2\) and this was interpreted as indicating that there was a previously unidentified oxygen debt. However, there is no convincing evidence that vasodilators improve outcome in critically ill patients. An alternative strategy that attempts to redirect blood flow from overperfused non-essential tissues such as skin and muscle tissues to underperfused "vital" organs by exploiting the differences in receptor population and density between different arteries is theoretically attractive. While dobutamine may reduce splanchnic perfusion, dopamine hydrochloride has dopaminergic and \(\beta\)-adrenergic but no \(\alpha\)-adrenergic effects and may selectively increase renal and splanchnic blood flow.

**OXYGEN TRANSPORT FROM CAPILLARY BLOOD TO INDIVIDUAL CELLS**

The delivery of oxygen from capillary blood to the cell depends on:

- factors that influence diffusion (fig 2.4);
- the rate of oxygen delivery to the capillary (\(\text{DO}_2\))
- the position of the oxygen-haemoglobin dissociation relationship (\(P_{50}\))
- the rate of cellular oxygen utilisation and uptake (\(V_{\text{O}}_2\)).

The sigmoid oxygen-haemoglobin dissociation relationship is influenced by various physicochemical factors and its position is defined by the PaO\(_2\) at which 50% of the Hb is saturated (\(P_50\)), normally 3.5 kPa. An increase in \(P_50\) or rightward shift in this relationship reduces the Hb saturation (\(S_{\text{ao}}\)) for any given \(P_{\text{a}}\)O\(_2\), thereby increasing tissue oxygen availability. This is caused by pyrexia, acidosis, and an increase in intracellular phosphate, notably 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG). The importance of correcting hypophosphataemia, often found in diabetic ketoacidosis and sepsis, is frequently overlooked.

Mathematical models of tissue hypoxia show that the fall in cellular oxygen resulting from an increase in intercapillary distance is more severe if the reduction in tissue \(\text{DO}_2\) is caused by "hypoxic" hypoxia (a fall in \(P_{\text{a}}\)O\(_2\)) rather than "stagnant" (a fall in flow) or "anaemic" hypoxia (fig 2.5). Studies in patients with hypoxaemic respiratory failure have also shown that it is \(P_{\text{a}}\)O\(_2\) rather than \(\text{DO}_2\)—that is, diffusion rather than convection—that has the major influence on outcome.

Thus, tissue oedema due to increased vascular permeability or excessive fluid loading may result in impaired oxygen diffusion and cellular hypoxia, particularly in clinical situations associated with arterial hypoxaemia. In these situations, avoiding tissue oedema may improve tissue oxygenation.
OXYGEN DELIVERY AT THE TISSUE LEVEL

Individual organs and cells vary considerably in their sensitivity to hypoxia. Neurons, cardiomyocytes, and renal tubular cells are exquisitely sensitive to a sudden reduction in oxygen supply and are unable to survive sustained periods of hypoxia, although ischaemic preconditioning does increase tolerance to hypoxia. Following complete cessation of cerebral perfusion, nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) measurements show a 50% decrease in cellular adenosine triphosphate (ATP) within 30 seconds and irreversible damage occurs within 3 minutes. Mechanisms have developed in other tissues to survive longer without oxygen: the kidneys and liver can tolerate 15–20 minutes of total hypoxia, skeletal muscle 60–90 minutes, and vascular smooth muscle 24–72 hours. The most extreme example of hypoxic tolerance is that of hair and nails which continue to grow for several days after death.

Variation in tissue tolerance to hypoxia has important clinical implications. In an emergency, maintenance of blood flow to the most hypoxia sensitive organs should be the primary goal. Hypoxic brain damage after cardiorespiratory collapse will leave a patient incapable of independent life even if the other organ systems survive. Although tissue death may not occur as rapidly in less oxygen sensitive tissues, prolonged failure to make the diagnosis has equally serious consequences. For example, skeletal muscle may survive severe ischaemia for several hours but failure to remove the causative arterial embolus will result in muscle necrosis with the release into the circulation of myoglobin and other toxins and activation of the inflammatory response.

Tolerance to hypoxia differs in health and disease. In a septic patient inhibition of enzyme systems and oxygen utilisation reduces hypoxic tolerance. Methods aimed at enhancing metabolic performance including the use of alternative substrates, techniques to inhibit endotoxin induced cellular damage, and drugs to reduce oxidant induced intracellular damage are currently under investigation. Ischaemic preconditioning of the heart and skeletal muscle is recognised both in vivo and in experimental models. Progressive or repeated exposure to hypoxia enhances tissue tolerance to oxygen deprivation in much the same way as altitude acclimatisation. An acclimatised mountaineer at the peak of Mount Everest can tolerate a PaO2 of 4–4.5 kPa for several hours, which would result in loss of consciousness within a few minutes in a normal subject at sea level.

What is the critical level of tissue oxygenation below which cellular damage will occur? The answer mainly depends on the patient’s circumstances, comorbid factors, and the duration of hypoxia. For example, young previously healthy patients with the acute respiratory distress syndrome tolerate prolonged hypoxaemia with saturations as low as 85% and can recover completely. In the older patient with widespread atheroma, however, prolonged hypoxaemia at such levels would be unacceptable.

RECOGNITION OF INADEQUATE TISSUE OXYGEN DELIVERY

The blood lactate concentration is an unreliable indicator of tissue hypoxia. It represents a balance between tissue production and consumption by hepatic and, to a lesser extent, by cardiac and skeletal muscle. Inhibition of phosphofructokinase blocks glucose utilisation during aerobic metabolism may be blocked at several points. Inhibition of phosphofructokinase blocks glucose utilisation without an increase in lactate concentration. In contrast, endotoxin and sepsis may inactivate pyruvate dehydrogenase, preventing pyruvate utilisation in the Krebs cycle resulting in lactate production in the absence of hypoxia. Similarly, a normal Do2 with an unfavourable cellular redox state may result in a high lactate concentration, whereas compensatory reductions in energy state [ATP]/[ADP]/[Pi] or [NAD+/NADH] may be associated with a low lactate concentration during hypoxia. Thus, the value of a single lactate measurement in the assessment of tissue hypoxia is limited. The suggestion that pathological supply dependency occurs only when blood lactate concentrations are raised is incorrect as the
same relationship may be found in patients with normal lactate concentrations. Serial lactate measurements, particularly if corrected for pyruvate, may be of greater value.

Measurement of individual organ and tissue oxygenation is an important goal for the future. These measurements are difficult, require specialized techniques, and are not widely available. At present only near infrared spectroscopy and gastric tonometry have clinical applications in the detection of organ hypoxia. In the future NMR spectroscopy may allow direct non-invasive measurement of tissue energy status and oxygen utilisation.

CELLULAR OXYGEN UTILISATION
In general, eukaryotic cells are dependent on aerobic metabolism as mitochondrial respiration offers greater efficiency for the extraction of energy from glucose than anaerobic glycolysis. The maintenance of oxidative metabolism is dependent on a wide range of values for a variety of cellular enzymes is shown in Table 2.2, illustrating that certain metabolic functions are more sensitive to hypoxia than others. Cellular tolerance to hypoxia may involve “hibernation” strategies that reduce metabolic rate, increased oxygen extraction from surrounding tissues, and enzyme adaptations that allow continuing metabolism at low partial pressures of oxygen.

Anaerobic metabolism is important for survival in some tissues despite its inherent inefficiency: skeletal muscle increases glucose uptake by 600% during hypoxia and bladder smooth muscle can generate up to 60% of total energy requirement by anaerobic glycolysis. In cardiac cells anaerobic glucose utilisation protects cell membrane integrity by maintaining energy dependent K+ channels. During hypoxic stress endothelial and vascular smooth muscle cells increase glucose transport through the expression of membrane glucose transporters (GLUT-1 and GLUT-4) and the production of glycolytic enzymes, thereby increasing anaerobic glycolysis and maintaining energy production.
transport and protein production are downregulated to balance supply and demand.

Cellular oxygen utilisation is inhibited by metabolic poisons (cyanide) and toxins associated with sepsis such as endotoxin and other cytokines, thereby reducing energy production. It is yet to be established whether there are important differences in the response to tissue hypoxia resulting from damage to mitochondrial and other intracellular functions as occurs in poisoning and sepsis, as opposed to situations such as exercise and altitude when oxygen consumption exceeds supply.

**OXYGEN SENSING AND GENE ACTIVATION**

The molecular basis for oxygen sensing has not been established and may differ between tissues. Current evidence suggests that, following activation of a “hypoxic sensor”, the signal is transmitted through the cell by second messengers which then activate regulatory protein complexes termed transcription factors. These factors translocate to the nucleus and bind with specific DNA sequences, activating various genes with the subsequent production of effectors proteins. It has long been postulated that the “hypoxic sensor” may involve haem-containing proteins, redox potential or mitochondrial cytochromes. Recent evidence from vascular smooth muscle suggests that hypoxia induced inhibition of electron transfer at complex III in the electron transport chain may act as the “hypoxic sensor”. This sensing mechanism is associated with the production of oxygen free radicals (ubiquinone cycle) that may act as second messengers in the activation of transcription factors.

Several transcription factors play a role in the response to tissue hypoxia including hypoxia inducible factor 1 (HIF-1), early growth response 1 (Erg-1), activator protein 1 (AP-1), nuclear factor kappa-B (NF-kB), and nuclear factor IL-6 (NF-IL-6). HIF-1 influences vascular homeostasis during hypoxia by activating the genes for erythropoietin, nitric oxide synthase and other cytokines, thereby reducing energy production. Cellular oxygen utilisation is inhibited by metabolic poisons (cyanide) and toxins associated with sepsis such as endotoxin and other cytokines, thereby reducing energy production. It is yet to be established whether there are important differences in the response to tissue hypoxia resulting from damage to mitochondrial and other intracellular functions as occurs in poisoning and sepsis, as opposed to situations such as exercise and altitude when oxygen consumption exceeds supply.

**Table 2.2 Oxygen affinities of cellular enzymes expressed as the partial pressure of oxygen in mm Hg at which the enzyme rate is half maximum (KmO2)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enzyme</th>
<th>Substrate</th>
<th>KmO2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glucose oxidase</td>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xanthine oxidase</td>
<td>Hypoxanthine</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tryptophan oxidase</td>
<td>Tryptophan</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitric oxide synthase</td>
<td>L-arginine</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrosine hydroxylase</td>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NADPH oxidase</td>
<td>Oxygen</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytochrome aa3</td>
<td>Oxygen</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key points**

- Restoration of global oxygen delivery is an important goal in early resuscitation but thereafter circulatory manipulation to sustain “supranormal” oxygen delivery does not improve survival and may be harmful.
- Regional distribution of oxygen delivery is vital: if skin and muscle receive high blood flows but the splanchic bed does not, the gut may become hypoxic despite high global oxygen delivery.
- Microcirculatory, tissue diffusion, and cellular factors influence the oxygen status of the cell and global measurements may fail to identify local tissue hypoxaemia.
- Supranormal levels of oxygen delivery cannot compensate for diffusion problems between capillary and cell, nor for metabolic failure within the cell.
- When assessing Do2/VO2 relationships, direct measurements should be used to avoid errors due to mathematical linkage.
- Strategies to reduce metabolic rate to improve tissue oxygenation should be considered.

**REFERENCES**

3 Critical care management of community acquired pneumonia
S V Baudouin

Community acquired pneumonia (CAP) is a common illness with an estimated incidence of 2–12 cases/1000 population per year. The majority of cases of CAP are successfully managed outside hospital, but approximately 20% require hospital admission. Out of this group about 10% develop severe CAP and need treatment in an intensive care unit (ICU). The mortality of these patients can exceed 50%, and the purpose of this chapter is to review the management of severe CAP. Excellent guidelines for the management of CAP have been produced by several organisations including the British Thoracic Society (BTS), the American Thoracic Society (ATS), European and Infectious Disease Working Groups. Revised BTS guidelines have recently been published and previous ATS recommendations are being revised. Any practitioner who is responsible for patients with CAP should consult one of these documents. This chapter will discuss both general approaches to CAP and also highlight specific areas of critical care management.

ASSESSMENT OF SEVERITY
For the purposes of epidemiological studies, the definition of severe CAP as “CAP needing ICU admission” is adequate. In practical management terms, however, a more detailed method of assessment is needed. Severe CAP is almost always a multiorgan disease and patients with severe CAP at presentation will either already have, or will be rapidly developing, multiple organ failure. It is important that respiratory and other “front line” physicians appreciate this aspect of the disease. Apparent stability on high flow oxygen can rapidly change to respiratory, circulatory, and renal failure. Progressive loss of tissue oxygenation needs to be anticipated, recognised quickly, and rapid action taken to prevent its progression to established organ failure.

The BTS guidelines define severe pneumonia (“rule 1”) as the presence of two or more of the following features on hospital admission:
- Respiratory rate >30/minute
- Diastolic blood pressure <90 mm Hg
- Urea >7 mmol/l

The guidelines include three additional assessment recommendations. The presence of any one of these approximately doubles the rate of death:
- Altered mental status, confusion or an Abbreviated Mental Test score of <8/10
- Hypoxaemia (PaO2 <8 kPa or O2 saturation <90%), with or without a raised FiO2
- Bilateral or multilobar (more than two lobes) shadowing on the chest radiograph

In a number of studies, use of BTS “rule 1” identifies a group of inpatients with a greater than 20% mortality from CAP.

The ATS guidelines on CAP include minor and major criteria for severity assessment. Minor criteria on admission include:
- Respiratory rate >30/minute
- Severe respiratory failure (PaO2/FiO2 <250 mm Hg)
- Bilateral involvement on chest radiograph
- Multilobe involvement on chest radiograph
- Systolic blood pressure <90 mm Hg
- Diastolic blood pressure <60 mm Hg

Major criteria at or following admission include:
- Need for mechanical ventilation
- Increase in the size of radiographic infiltrates >50% in the presence or absence of a clinical response or deterioration
- Need for vasopressor support for >4 hours
- Worsening renal function as defined by a serum creatinine of ≥180 mmol/l

Using the need for ICU admission as the end point, various combinations of minor and major criteria give different combinations of specificity and sensitivity. In the presence of at least one of the ATS criteria sensitivity was 98% but specificity only 32%. Positive predictive power was much improved using a combination of two of three major criteria and multilobar involvement. Sensitivity was 78% and specificity 94%.

More than a decade ago the BTS performed a ground breaking study on severe CAP. In their series 60 patients from 25 hospitals required ICU care in a 12 month period. One of the more striking findings was that eight patients were admitted to the ICU only after suffering cardiorespiratory arrest on general medical wards. In retrospect, six of these eight could have been identified using the BTS “rule 1” severity guide. In a related study CAP related deaths over 3 years in patients aged <65 years in the Nottingham area of the UK were retrospectively audited. They found evidence of suboptimum care in a number of cases, including a lack of appreciation of disease severity, lack of input from senior doctors, and lack of suitable investigations including arterial blood gas measurements. These and other studies provided evidence of suboptimal management of patients with severe CAP in the late 1980s and early 1990s. They also produced clear and simple assessment tools and guidelines to improve practice. Unfortunately, recent reports suggest that these important lessons have not been learnt. McQuillan and coworkers recently performed a confidential inquiry into the quality of care before admission to the ICU which covered...
a wide range of both medical and surgical admissions including patients with severe CAP. The study found that suboptimal care had been given to 54% and, importantly, that hospital mortality in this group was significantly higher than in those managed well (56% v 35%). Errors in the management of the airway, breathing, circulation, monitoring, and oxygen therapy were common.

Correct management of severe CAP before admission to the ICU is therefore essential. Recognition of the severity of illness is the first vital step, in which application of the BTS severity rules and screening pulse oximetry are useful tools. Repeated regular assessment by the same observer in the initial stages of the illness is necessary and rapid review by a critical care practitioner should be arranged for any patient who meets the BTS or similar severity criteria or who is deteriorating. The need for increasing FiO2, altered mental state (confusion, aggression), and the onset of either respiratory or metabolic acidosis are all signs of disease progression and the need for further intervention.

In the UK the recent publication of the Department of Health document "Comprehensive Critical Care" suggests expanding high dependency or—in the new terminology—level 2 care. This would provide a suitable environment for the initial treatment of patients with severe CAP who do not need immediate mechanical ventilation. These patients are likely to benefit from more intensive monitoring (arterial line, central venous line, urinary catheter) and treatment (rapid correction of hypovolaemia, inotropic support, continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP), non-invasive ventilation (NIV)). Level 2 care also allows the rapid initiation of invasive mechanical ventilation when needed.

CO-MORBIDITY

The original BTS study on severe CAP pointed to the importance of pre-existing co-morbidity: 63% of this group had serious pre-morbid conditions including chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD, 32%), asthma (13%), and cardiac problems (15%). Other significant conditions included diabetes, chronic liver disease, chronic renal failure, and alcohol dependency. Immunosuppression was also a risk factor for severe CAP. The incidence of severe CAP increases with age and increasing age probably adversely affects outcome; analysis of 11 studies of CAP in the elderly showed that more than 90% of pneumonia deaths occurred in patients over the age of 70.

MICROBIOLOGY

In the last decade a number of important facts have been established about the microbiology of CAP: (1) a relatively small number of pathogens account for the majority of infections; (2) Streptococcus pneumoniae has been consistently shown to be the commonest pathogen in Europe and North America; and (3) in at least one third of cases no definitive causative pathogen can be isolated. However, the relative importance of pathogens varies considerably worldwide. For example, in a report from Singapore, Burkholderia pseudomallei was the most common cause of severe CAP.1

In addition to S. pneumoniae, other important pathogens in CAP include Haemophilus influenzae, Legionella species, Staphylococcus aureus, Gram negative organisms, Mycoplasma, Coccidia species, and respiratory viruses. European and North American studies have found similar incidences of specific pathogens. In a survey of 16 studies of severe CAP the following pathogens were isolated: S. pneumoniae 12–38%; Legionella spp 0–30%; Staph aureus 1–18%; and Gram negative enteric bacilli 2–34%. There is an important change in the frequency of these pathogens depending on the severity of the illness (Fig 3.1). In the UK there is a high relative frequency of Legionella and Staph aureus in severe CAP compared with cases cared for in the community or the general wards. The relative frequency of S. pneumoniae is reduced in severe CAP but it remains the most frequent pathogen isolated.

MIcrobiological investigation and diagnosis

At least three strategies have been used in the microbiological diagnosis of severe CAP. These can be summarised as (1) the syndrome approach; (2) the laboratory based approach; and (3) the empirical approach.7 The strengths or weaknesses of each of these strategies will be reviewed in the following sections.

The syndrome approach

This is based on the assumption that different pathogens cause distinct and non-overlapping clinical syndromes. The terms “typical” and “atypical” pneumonia were adopted to describe these syndromes. Typical pneumonia was caused by the pneumococcus and was said to present with pyrexia of greater than 39°C, pleuritic chest pain, a lobar distribution of consolidation, and an increase in immature granulocytes. Features of atypical pneumonia included a more gradual onset and a diffuse interstitial or alveolar pattern on the plain chest radiograph.

Numerous studies, however, have shown that clinical overlap between the different pathogens is great and that no single or combination of symptoms and plain chest radiology will reliably differentiate between the different pathogens.8 In severe CAP the situation is even more difficult; case series of severe pneumococcal, staphylococcal, and legionella pneumonia show no reliable distinguishing features. In a recent series of 84 patients requiring ICU admission for severe legionella pneumonia, 39% had only unilateral radiographic changes at presentation.9 Hyponatraemia is often quoted as a sign of legionella pneumonia but in this series9 hyponatraemia was strongly associated with poor outcome, suggesting that it is a marker of disease severity rather than disease type.

The laboratory based approach

There are a number of reasons for attempting to identify precisely the pathogen in severe CAP: to confirm the diagnosis, to guide antibiotic choice, to define antibiotic sensitivities, and to provide epidemiological information. All current guidelines
Box 3.1 BTS guidelines for routine investigations in hospital for all patients with severe CAP

- Blood cultures
- Sputum or lower respiratory tract sample for Gram stain, routine culture, and sensitivity tests
- Pleural fluid analysis, if present
- Pneumococcal antigen test on sputum, blood, or urine
- Investigations for legionella pneumonia including (a) urine for legionella antigen, (b) sputum or lower respiratory tract samples for legionella culture and direct immunofluorescence, and (c) initial and follow up legionella serology
- Respiratory samples for direct immunofluorescence to respiratory viruses, Chlamydia species, and possibly Pneumocystis
- Initial and follow up serology for atypical pathogens

recommend intensive microbiological investigation. The BTS recommendations for routine investigations in severe CAP are summarised in box 3.1. While it is difficult to disagree with this thorough approach to diagnosis, a number of practical problems require discussion. Firstly, there is no good evidence that this strategy alters the outcome of severe CAP and retrospective studies disagree about the impact of laboratory based microbiological testing on outcome. In at least 30% of cases no pathogen can be isolated and this group has as good a prognosis. Outcome in severe CAP is also strongly related to secondary factors including the number of failed organs and co-morbidities. For these reasons the precise identification of the respiratory pathogen may have little impact on recovery. Secondly, current diagnostic tests are neither sensitive nor specific in severe CAP. One difficulty is that isolation of a pathogen in severe CAP does not necessarily indicate causation unless the pathogen is never isolated from healthy individuals—for example, Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Respiratory tract specimens containing few squamous epithelial cells, numerous neutrophils, and large numbers of Gram positive, lancet-shaped diplococci are highly specific for pneumococcal pneumonia. However, sensitivity is much lower. Poorly obtained or processed specimens and lack of observer experience can dramatically alter the yield. Sputum culture suffers from similar problems of low sensitivity and specificity, with the quality of the sample and prior antibiotic treatment having a major impact on yield. Blood cultures are positive in only 4–18% of hospitalised patients with CAP. Pneumococcus is the most common pathogen isolated but prior antibiotic treatment significantly reduces yield.

Pneumococcal polysaccharide antigen can be detected in respiratory or other fluids by a variety of methods. It has the advantage of being less strongly influenced by prior antibiotics, but sensitivity and specificity are very variable between studies. Urinary antigen testing for legionella serogroup 1 is more than 95% specific for infection, but sensitivity is low and the test does not detect other Legionella species. There is current interest in the detection of specific microbiological nucleic acids by amplification techniques such as reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR). These techniques are likely to suffer from similar sensitivity and specificity problems that affect conventional tests.

Most patients with severe CAP require endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilatory support. In these circumstances, fibroptic bronchoscopy becomes relatively straightforward and safe. Should all intubated patients with severe but microbiologically undiagnosed CAP be bronchosceded? An evidence based approach cannot be taken as randomised controlled trials have not been performed. The advantages are that other pathology such as endobronchial obstruction may be discovered and that a targeted sample of lower respiratory tract secretions may be obtained. However, samples obtained using standard techniques are always contaminated by upper airway flora and are probably no better than standard sputum samples. Protected specimen brush (PSB) and bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) are techniques which attempt to overcome some of these obstacles. PSB techniques use a telescoped plugged catheter that is passed through the bronchoscope. It contains a brush protected by a plug which is used to obtain the sample and then placed in culture medium. Quantification of the subsequent culture is usually performed to improve diagnosis. Studies on non-intubated patients with CAP report potential pathogens in 54–85% of cases. However, the yield in three series of intubated patients with severe CAP already receiving antibiotic treatment was reduced to 13–48%. BAL samples a larger lung volume than PSB and the yield appears to be comparable to PSB, although the evidence is very limited. In patients with CAP who fail to respond to initial treatment, BAL identifies pathogens in 12–30%. Hence, while the yield in severe CAP is relatively low, it is recommended that bronchoscopy is performed where the diagnosis is not established or where treatment is failing.

Empirical approach to microbiological treatment

All major guidelines take the view that clinical syndromes are non-specific and that diagnostic tests are either too slow or insufficiently reliable to help in the initial choice of treatment. An empirical approach relies on a good knowledge of the range of likely local pathogens and the fact that a small number of antibiotics (or a single agent) will usually be effective. It has the added advantage of preventing long delays in treatment while the results of laboratory tests are awaited. The performance of diagnostic tests is encouraged as a guide to modify antibiotic treatment if a pathogen is identified.

ANTIMICROBIAL TREATMENT

Detailed reviews of candidate antibiotics for the treatment of severe CAP are available in recently published articles. Antibiotic resistance is becoming an increasing problem with a number of reports of penicillin resistant S pneumoniae. In the UK, however, clinically relevant S pneumoniae resistance is rare and the BTS guidelines continue to recommend amoxicillin alone for non-severe home based CAP treatment.

The severely ill patient with CAP requires a broader antibiotic coverage that must include the pathogens most commonly causing severe CAP. The BTS guidelines recommend the combination of amoxicillin/clavulenate with clarithromycin and the optional addition of rifampicin. The amoxicillin/clavulenate combination will cover both the pneumococcus and beta-lactamase producing pathogens such as H influenzae. Clarithromycin is a macrolide antibiotic that is effective against “atypical” organisms including Legionella spp and against S pneumoniae. Rifampicin is effective against Legionella spp and provides antistaphylococcal cover. Other antibiotic regimens have been suggested for the empirical treatment of severe CAP but there is little objective evidence to support one approach over another. Alternatives for patients intolerant of the preferred combination include:

- Substitution of ceftaxime, cefotaxime, or ceftriaxone for amoxicillin/clavulenate; clarithromycin and rifampicin remain
INTENSIVE CARE TREATMENT

Published case series of severe CAP emphasise that the ICU treatment of this group of patients involves the support of multiple failing organ systems. Most patients die of the complications of multiorgan failure rather than from respiratory failure alone. In the BTS severe CAP study 32% developed acute renal failure and 55% septic shock; 25% developed central nervous system problems including vascular events and convulsions. Patients with severe CAP have sepsis from a respiratory source and are optimally managed by a team with experience of the complications of sepsis. These patients often require haemofiltration for renal replacement therapy, invasive circulatory monitoring, and the use of vasopressors and inotropes. Survivors of severe CAP tend to have prolonged ICU admissions and complications are frequent. In the BTS study 12 of the 18 patients who still required ventilatory support at 14 days ultimately survived. Most patients who need prolonged ventilatory support will require a tracheostomy to wean from ventilation.

RESPIRATORY MANAGEMENT

All patients with severe CAP require high flow oxygen therapy. In all except those with a background of chronic respiratory failure, FIO₂ can be rapidly titrated against non-invasive SaO₂ measurements with regular arterial blood gas analysis used to check calibration. Hypercapnia is a sign of ventilatory failure and indicates the need for more intensive support (usually intubation and mechanical ventilation). Increasing metabolic acidosis indicates the development of circulatory shock and the requirement for fluid resuscitation and inotropic support. CPAP can improve oxygenation in diffuse lung disease by recruiting and stabilising collapsed alveolar units. It is a standard treatment in severe pneumocystis pneumonia and a few case reports describe its successful use in severe CAP. However, a recent randomised controlled trial of CPAP in patients at high risk of developing acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) was negative. In the study 123 consecutive adult patients with marked impairment of gas exchange (Pao₂/FIO₂ < 300 mm Hg) were randomised to either standard treatment or standard treatment and facial CPAP. The group was heterogeneous but 52 patients had pneumonia. There was no significant difference in intubation rates (34% v 39% in the standard group) or hospital mortality. Of concern was the occurrence of four cardiopulmonary arrests in the CPAP group, probably due to delayed endotracheal intubation.

NIV is a further treatment option in severe CAP. Its use in exacerbations of COPD is supported by a number of randomised clinical trials. A recent randomised trial of NIV in severe CAP has also been reported. Fifty eight consecutive patients with severe CAP were randomised to either conventional treatment or conventional treatment and NIV. Both the intubation rate (50% v 21%) and length of stay in the ICU (6 v 1.8 days) were significantly reduced by NIV. However, subgroup analysis shows that the benefit only occurred in patients with COPD. Of concern was the trend to higher mortality in the NIV treated patients without COPD. Similarly, a small randomised study of NIV given in the emergency room for pneumonia had a higher mortality in the NIV group. One explanation for the higher mortality in NIV treated patients is delay in intubation which was demonstrated in the emergency room study. The message is clear. Non-invasive respiratory support (CPAP or NIV) should only be given to patients with severe CAP in designated and properly staffed critical care areas. In addition, enthusiasm for non-invasive support should not delay intubation, particularly in patients without COPD.

Most patients with severe CAP (88% in the BTS study) will require intubation and mechanical ventilation. A number of these will develop diffuse lung injury and should be managed in a manner identical to others with ARDS (see chapter 9). In occasional cases with focal pneumonia massive shunt across the diseased lobe is the cause of severe hypoxaemia. The use of positioning and differential lung ventilation has been described in this situation. Placing the “good lung down” may increase Pao₂ by 1.5–2.0 kPa as blood flow increases to the well ventilated lung. Differential lung ventilation requires the placement of a double lumen tube. The correct placement of such tubes can be difficult in the stable patient and requires great expertise in the severely ill. Following placement, each lung can be separately ventilated and the effects of different ventilatory strategies assessed.

The optimal ventilatory strategy for most patients with severe CAP has not been established. Both volume controlled and pressure controlled modes are used with varying levels of positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP). The recent multicentre ARDS study on ventilation suggests that a volume limited strategy should be adopted to reduce ventilator associated lung injury. Although the approach of limiting tidal volume and airway pressure and allowing a controlled degree of hypercapnia is appealing, this strategy has not been examined in patients with severe CAP without ARDS.

FAILURE TO IMPROVE

Lack of clinical response at 48–72 hours is usually taken as an indication of probable treatment failure, although improvement in the elderly may take longer. The diagnosis should be reviewed and conditions such as cardiac failure and pulmonary infarction excluded. Culture results will be available by this stage and may necessitate a change in antibiotics. Pulmonary and extrapulmonary complications of infection should be investigated and treated. These include lung abscess and necrosis, empyema, meningitis, endocarditis, and nosocomial infections (including pneumonia and line infections). A recent multicentre study on the management of ventilator associated pneumonia suggested that bronchoscopy and lavage may be useful at this stage. The possibility of immunosuppression should be considered and a history of recent foreign travel excluded. Pathogens that are very unusual in the UK are common causes of CAP in some countries and tuberculosis still occasionally presents as overwhelming pneumonia.

OUTCOME AND PROGNOSIS

The mortality of patients with CAP needing ICU admission is high. A meta-analysis found a mortality of 36.5% in ICU admissions with a range of 21.7–57.3%. In the early 1970s Knaus and coworkers developed a predictive model of ICU outcome known as the APACHE (acute physiology and chronic health evaluation) scoring system. This model has been refined and alternative models produced. All these systems indicate that outcome in ICU is related to the initial severity of illness (as measured by abnormal physiology on admission), the type of illness, and the pre-admission health status of the patient. Increasing age also has a negative impact on outcome. A number of studies have confirmed that these variables are important determinates of outcome in severe CAP. The independent impact of individual pathogens on survival is more difficult to determine. S pneumoniae, Staph aureus, Legionella spp, and Gram negative bacilli have all been reported in different studies to be independently associated with death.

REFERENCES

Critical care management of community acquired pneumonia


7 Woodhead M. Predicting death from pneumonia. Thorax 1996;51:970.


Nosocomial pneumonia is the second most frequently hospital acquired infection and the most frequently acquired infection in the intensive care unit (ICU). The incidence is age dependent, with about 5/1000 cases in hospitalised patients aged under 35 and up to 15/1000 in those over 65 years of age.\textsuperscript{12,13} Death from nosocomial pneumonia in ventilated patients reaches 30–50\%, with an estimated attributable mortality of 10–50\%.\textsuperscript{14,15} Increasing microbial resistance worldwide imposes an additional challenge for prevention and antimicrobial treatment strategies.\textsuperscript{16}

In the last two decades efforts have been made to improve outcomes by establishing valid diagnostic and therapeutic strategies. Nevertheless, controversy persists in many issues regarding the management of nosocomial pneumonia. This chapter focuses on the main controversies in diagnosis and treatment.

**DEFINITIONS**

Nosocomial pneumonia usually affects mechanically ventilated patients, hence the term “ventilator associated pneumonia (VAP)” is used synonymously. However, nosocomial pneumonia may occur in non-ventilated patients, creating a distinct entity (table 4.1). Notably, all concepts of nosocomial pneumonia refer to the non-immunosuppressed host, with absence of “immunosuppression” defined as absence of risk for infection with opportunistic pathogens.

Dividing patients with VAP into groups with early and late onset has been shown to be of paramount importance.\textsuperscript{17} Early onset pneumonia commonly results from aspiration of endogenous community acquired pathogens such as *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, and *Haemophilus influenzae*, with endotracheal intubation and impaired consciousness being the main risk factors.\textsuperscript{18–20} Conversely, late onset pneumonia follows aspiration of oropharyngeal or gastric secretions containing potentially drug resistant nosocomial pathogens. Only late onset VAP is associated with an attributable excess mortality.\textsuperscript{21}

The definitions of early and late onset VAP have not been standardised. Firstly, the starting point for early onset pneumonia has varied considerably, including time of hospital admission, of admission to the ICU, or of endotracheal intubation. If the time of admission to the ICU is chosen as the starting point, patients may already have been colonised in hospital and consequently differences between early and late onset pneumonia will no longer be evident.\textsuperscript{22–24} In accordance with the American Thoracic Society (ATS) guidelines, we advocate using the time of hospital admission. Secondly, the cut off time separating early and late onset VAP has not been standardised. The ATS suggested using the fifth day after hospital admission.\textsuperscript{25} We have shown that colonisation of patients after head injury markedly changed between the third and fourth day in favour of nosocomial pathogens.\textsuperscript{26} Whereas the oropharynx, nose, tracheobronchial tree were initially colonized with endogenous community acquired pathogens, this pattern was subsequently changed by an increasing number of typical nosocomial pathogens. Trouillet et al have shown that isolation of drug resistant microorganisms can be predicted by the duration of intubation and antimicrobial treatment\textsuperscript{27}; the cut off between early and late onset VAP was used was 7 days.

Traditionally, nosocomial pneumonia is defined as occurring in patients admitted to hospital (or intubated) for at least 48 hours.\textsuperscript{28} However, this definition is no longer adequate at least for VAP because a significant number of cases occur within 48 hours of hospital admission as a consequence of intubation, particularly emergency intubation. In these patients cardiopulmonary resuscitation and continuous sedation were independent risk factors for the development of VAP while antimicrobial treatment was protective.\textsuperscript{29}

Key features of the current definitions of nosocomial pneumonia are summarized in box 4.1.

**ANTIMICROBIAL TREATMENT**

Several investigations have addressed the efficacy of antimicrobial treatment as well as its impact on microbial resistance. Such studies have resolved many of the controversies surrounding the use of antimicrobial agents in the hospital setting (fig 4.1). The immediate administration of treatment

---

**Table 4.1** Differences in nosocomial pneumonia affecting non-ventilated and ventilated patients (ventilator associated pneumonia, VAP)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Incidence</th>
<th>Non-ventilated patients</th>
<th>Ventilated patients</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aetiology</td>
<td>GNEB, Legionella spp</td>
<td>Core pathogens; PDRM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortality</td>
<td>Probably relatively low</td>
<td>30–50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis</td>
<td>Clinical; TTA; virtually no data on bronchoscopy</td>
<td>Clinical; TBAS, bronchoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotics</td>
<td>Monotherapy</td>
<td>Early onset: monotherapy. Late onset: combination therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention</td>
<td>General measures of infection control</td>
<td>Additionally, measures to reduce risk factors associated with intubation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GNEB = Gram negative enteric bacteria; PDRM = potentially drug resistant microorganisms; TTA = transthoracic aspiration; TBAS = tracheobronchial secretions.
is crucial and inappropriate treatment is associated with an increased risk of death from pneumonia. Moreover, even if the initially inappropriate antimicrobial treatment is corrected according to diagnostic test results, there remains an excess mortality compared with patients treated appropriately from the beginning.

Conversely, antimicrobial treatment is not without risk, particularly prolonged broad spectrum antimicrobial treatment. Rello and coworkers showed that antimicrobial pretreatment was the only adverse prognostic factor in a multivariate model. However, if pneumonia due to high risk organisms (P. aeruginosa, A. calcoaceticus, S. marcescens, P. mirabilis, and fungi) was included in the model, the presence of these high risk organisms was the only independent predictor and antimicrobial pretreatment dropped out. Thus, antimicrobial pretreatment imposes considerable microbial selection pressure, and is associated with excess mortality due to pneumonia caused by drug resistant microorganisms.

It has become increasingly clear that each antimicrobial treatment policy imposes specific selection pressures, and therefore microbial and resistance patterns in each setting can to some extent be regarded as the footprints of past antimicrobial treatment policies. With this in mind, it is clear that recommendations for initial empirical antimicrobial treatment must be flexible so that they may be modified in accordance with local circumstances. Accordingly, changing microbial patterns and increasing rates of microbial resistance must be recognized at the local level so that correspondingly changes in general antimicrobial treatment policies may be instituted.

**DIAGNOSTIC STRATEGIES**

Clinical observations, laboratory results, and chest radiographs are of limited value in diagnosing VAP, and so great effort has been made to establish independent microbiological criteria. In our view these efforts have not yet succeeded. Despite its limitations, clinical assessment is the starting point for diagnosing VAP and alternative strategies must be interpreted with regard to their ability to decrease the rate of false positive clinical judgements (about 10–25%). On the other hand, the 20–40% false negative clinical judgements remain undetected. Moreover, although it is generally recognized that qualitative culture of tracheobronchial secretions is highly sensitive but poorly specific, precluding its use for establishing the diagnosis of VAP in the individual patient, only rarely has it been used for exclusion of VAP and as a tool for local surveillance. Qualitative tracheobronchial aspiration has a high negative predictive value, and a negative culture result in the absence of antimicrobial treatment virtually excludes VAP. Surveillance based on potential pathogens present in patients with suspected VAP is an increasingly attractive tool to direct local empirical antimicrobial treatment policies. Can quantitative culture overcome the limitations of qualitative tracheobronchial aspirates and allow for an individual diagnostic approach to VAP?

The technique of quantitative culture of bronchoscopically retrieved protected specimen brush (PSB) and bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) specimens has been evaluated by a variety of approaches. Early animal studies established a relationship between histological pneumonia and bacterial loads, but more recent studies have highlighted limitations of quantitative cultures. In ventilated mini-pigs the severity of bronchial and pulmonary inflammatory lesions and bacterial load were clearly associated. However, there was a large overlap, such that threshold bacterial loads could not differentiate between samples from unaffected pigs, those with bronchitis, and those with pneumonia. Similarly, in a subsequent study evaluating diagnostic tools, none had a satisfactory diagnostic yield. Studies in healthy non-intubated patients have shown a high specificity for PSB and BAL. In mechanically ventilated patients without suspected VAP the results were less impressive, yielding false positive results in 20–30%, although no strictly independent reference was used. In patients with suspected VAP a variety of diagnostic tools have been evaluated with conflicting results. These studies provided several general insights, although references and thresholds for the calculation of diagnostic indices varied considerably. Firstly, PSB and BAL had generally comparable diagnostic yields; secondly, tracheobronchial aspirates had comparable yields to PSB and BAL, with a tendency towards a lower specificity; and thirdly, all tools exhibited a rate of false negative and false positive results ranging from 10% to 30%. A study focusing on the variability of PSB showed that the qualitative repeatability was 100%, while in 59% of the patients the quantitative results varied more than tenfold. Based on these studies, several investigations were performed using post-mortem histological results or lung culture as an independent reference or gold standard. Despite several important methodological limitations, these studies revealed important clues to the relationships between histology, microbiology, and the diagnosis of VAP: (1) limited correlation between histological findings and the bacterial load of lung cultures; (2) the recognition that no single technique would be irrefutable; (3) a surprisingly high rate of false negative and false positive results of 10–50% regardless of the technique used; and (4) a comparable yield from non-invasive and invasive diagnostic tools. Reasons for false negative findings included sampling errors, antimicrobial pretreatment, and the presence of...
of stage specific bacterial loads during the evolution of pneumonia (developing as well as resolving pneumonia). Conversely, false positive results were attributable to contamination of the samples and bronchiolitis or bronchitis, particularly in patients with structural lung disease.

Studies evaluating the influence of diagnostic techniques on outcome have a number of limitations: (1) the usefulness of diagnostic techniques may vary within different populations; (2) this approach ignores the long term effects on microbial resistance; (3) the presence of excess mortality has only been shown for late onset VAP and was low (0–10%) in some studies; and (4) outcome measures are most consistently evaluated when antimicrobial treatment is stopped in patients without positive culture results which, in our view, is unethical. Four randomised studies have been published evaluating non-invasive and invasive diagnostic tools, three from Spain and one from France. The Spanish studies found no difference in outcome measures such as mortality, cost, duration of hospitalisation, ICU stay, and intubation. The multicentre French study found a bronchoscopic strategy including quantitative cultures of PSB and/or BAL specimens to be superior to a clinical strategy using qualitative tracheobronchial aspirates in terms of 14 day mortality, morbidity, and use of antimicrobial treatment. Each study had limitations, however, and the results of the French study raise the following concerns: firstly, the clinical strategy did not necessarily reflect routine practice; secondly, it is not clear from the data how the invasive strategy accounted for the better outcome; and, thirdly, the clinical group had a significantly higher rate of inadequate antimicrobial treatment.

In a response to our corresponding critique, the authors indicated that the latter was accounted for by the greater numbers of pathogens detected in tracheobronchial secretions from the clinical group. Although this is plausible, it is contradictory to assume that the higher detection rate of resistant microorganisms in tracheobronchial aspirates was associated with a worse outcome. Thus, it renders even less clear the issue of how the invasive strategy could translate into lower mortality. Moreover, the study does not allow one to draw any conclusion regarding the value of invasive bronchoscopic tools as compared with quantitative tracheobronchial aspirates. In our randomized study evaluating the impact of diagnostic techniques on outcome, we could not find any difference in outcome when quantitative tracheobronchial aspirates were compared with a bronchoscopic strategy.

In view of these data, we draw the following conclusions:

- Quantitative culture cannot confirm a diagnosis of VAP in the individual case.
- Non-invasive and invasive bronchoscopic tools have comparable diagnostic yields and share similar methodological limitations.
- The introduction of microbiological criteria to correct false positive clinical judgements does not result in more confident diagnoses of VAP; the microbiological correction of false positive judgements is countered by the misclassification of correctly positive clinical judgements.

**STATEMENTS FROM A CONSENSUS CONFERENCE**

A consensus conference, sponsored by four societies, on pneumonia acquired in the ICU was held in May 2002, and a summary document was published. Although we do not totally agree with the recommendations, those regarding diagnosis are summarized here.

1. Microbiological samples must be collected before initiation of antimicrobial agents.
2. Reliance on qualitative cultures of endotracheal aspirates leads to both over-diagnosis and under-diagnosis of pneumonia.

**NEW DEVELOPMENTS IN ANTIMICROBIAL TREATMENT**

The general limitations of diagnostic criteria for the diagnosis of VAP in the individual patient have fundamental consequences for any antimicrobial treatment strategy. We suggest a change in perspective away from the individual and towards an epidemiological approach, as elaborated in the ATS guidelines. Important components of such an approach include the following:

1. Initial antimicrobial treatment must always be empirical.
2. Empirical antimicrobial treatment can be guided by three criteria: severity of pneumonia, time of onset, and specific risk factors. All pneumonias acquired in the ICU are severe by definition in the guidelines.
3. The selection of antimicrobial agents must be adapted to regional or even local microbial and resistance patterns.
4. The diagnostic work up may offer additional clues that must be interpreted in the context of the patient’s condition. However, it is generally confined to suggesting potential pathogens and their resistance, which may be particularly relevant when there is no response to empirical antibiotics. It is therefore our practice to use quantitative tracheobronchial aspirates regularly, and bronchoscopy with PSB and BAL in patients who are not responding to treatment.

**Figure 4.2** Suggested approach to the management of a patient with suspected VAP. qTBS = quantitative tracheobronchial secretions.

- Identification of local epidemiology
- Definition of initial antimicrobial treatment policy
- Adaptation according to results of qTBS
- Cure
- Treatment failure
- Individual diagnostic work up (preferably by bronchoscopy)

When can antimicrobial treatment be withheld or stopped? Firstly, patients exhibiting signs of severe sepsis or septic shock must receive empirical treatment. Secondly, patients with clinically suspected VAP yielding borderline colony counts (>10<sup>5</sup> but <10<sup>7</sup> cfu/ml in PSB) who were untreated, were found to have an excess mortality if they developed significant colony counts within 72 hours. We therefore argue that stable patients with clinically suspected VAP but without an established pathogen should also receive empirical treatment.

The dilemma of potential overtreatment at the cost of increased microbial selection pressure could be addressed more satisfactorily if our ability to diagnose pneumonia according to clinical criteria improved. This could be achieved, firstly, by improving the clinical criteria for suspected VAP, as those currently in use (a new and persistent
infiltrate on the chest radiograph plus one to three of the following: fever or hypothermia, leucocytosis or leucopenia, and purulent tracheobronchial secretions) are outdated. In particular, it is inappropriate to ignore changes in oxygenation, and the criteria for severe sepsis and/or septic shock. Pugin et al\textsuperscript{56} have suggested a scoring system for VAP, including the following six weighted clinical and microbiological variables: temperature, white blood cell count, mean volume and nature of tracheobronchial aspirate, gas exchange ratio, and chest radiograph infiltrates. This score achieved a sensitivity of 72% and a specificity of 85% in a necroscopic study.\textsuperscript{45} It is tedious to calculate and includes microbiological criteria, but it indicates that criteria may be developed that significantly improve the predictive value of clinical judgement. A second way in which our ability to diagnose pneumonia could be improved is by developing valid severity criteria. Somewhat surprising is that, in contrast to community acquired pneumonia,\textsuperscript{57} severity assessment of VAP has not received much attention. However, it is clear that valid severity criteria may be of great help in determining when antimicrobial treatment may safely be withheld or stopped.

Finally, valid markers of the inflammatory response associated with VAP could work as surrogate markers for VAP and thereby be of help in guiding antimicrobial treatment decisions.

In the meantime, our approach is to judge the condition of the patient in view of all available clinical, laboratory, and radiographical information in order to improve our ability to predict the presence or absence of VAP. Culture results are then interpreted within this context and decisions are not made exclusively on the basis of thresholds.

A recent multicenter French study has shown similar clinical efficacy treating VAP with 7 days compared to 14. The confirmation of these findings would be of extreme importance to reduce the amount of antibiotics given in ICUs.\textsuperscript{58}

Another approach to reducing the microbial selection pressure imposed by empirical antimicrobial treatment is to reduce exposure by minimising the duration of treatment. The challenge would be to identify low risk groups without drug resistant microorganisms. In an elegant study by Singh et al\textsuperscript{59} patients with suspected nosocomial pneumonia (58% VAP) with a Pugin score of <6 (low clinical probability of pneumonia) received antimicrobial treatment for 10–21 days at the discretion of the attending physician or a 3 day course of ciprofloxacin. After 3 days treatment was stopped in those still considered to have a low clinical probability, whereas those with a higher Pugin score received a full course of standard antibiotics. The length of time in hospital and mortality did not differ but resistance and superinfection rates were higher in the control group (15% v 39%). The insight yielded by this important study is that the perspective was shifted away from all conflictive diagnostic issues; instead, a strategy was implemented that allowed reduction in the risk for individual under-treatment and for general overtreatment, with its inherent consequences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 4.2</th>
<th>General framework for empirical initial antimicrobial treatment of VAP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class of antimicrobial agents</strong></td>
<td><strong>Examples</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ventilated patients:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early onset, no risk factors</td>
<td>Cephalosporin II or Cefuroxime or Cefotaxime or Ceftriaxone or Aminopenicillin/β-lactamase inhibitor or Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid or Levofloxacin or Clindamycin or Aztreonam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late onset, no risk factors</td>
<td>Quinolone or Gentamicin or Tobramycin or Amikacin or Ciprofloxacin or Piperacillin/tazobactam or Ceftazidime or Aztreonam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early or late onset, risk factors</td>
<td>Risk factors for P. aeruginosa: see late onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk factors for MRSA: + vancomycin</td>
<td>Vancomycin or Erythromycin or Azithromycin or Clarithromycin or Levofloxacin or Moxifloxacin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk factor for legionellosis: macrolide</td>
<td>Azithromycin or Clarithromycin or Levofloxacin or Moxifloxacin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-ventilated patients:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early onset, no risk factors</td>
<td>See ventilated patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late onset, no risk factors</td>
<td>See ventilated patient; possibly monotherapy in the absence of severe pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early or late onset, risk factors</td>
<td>See ventilated patient, early or late onset, risk factors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In patients with suspected VAP due to Gram negative pathogens, a controlled rotation of one antimicrobial regimen (ceftazidime) to another (ciprofloxacin) was associated with a significant reduction in the incidence of VAP (12% v 7%), the incidence of resistant Gram negative pathogens (4% v 1%), and the incidence of Gram negative bacteraemia (2% v 0.3%). Similarly, controlled rotation of antibiotics including restricted use of ceftazidime and ciprofloxacin over 2 years was associated with a significant reduction in VAP cases from 231 to 161 (70%), of potentially drug resistant microorganisms from 140 to 79 (56%), but with an increase from 40% to 60% of methicillin resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) isolates. It should be stressed that these studies do not practise rotation in its strict sense, but simply strategies of controlled antimicrobial treatment. The role of antimicrobial rotation cannot therefore be determined yet, either as a fixed (or blinded) rotation or as a flexible (or controlled) rotation based on local microbial and resistance patterns.

**RECOMMENDATIONS FOR EMPIRICAL ANTIMICROBIAL TREATMENT**

Based on the ATS guidelines, the following recommendations can be made (table 4.2):

1. Patients with early onset VAP and no risk factors: core organisms such as community endogenous pathogens (Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus pneumoniae, and Haemophilus influenzae) and non-resistant Gram negative enterobacteriaceae (GNEB, including Escherichia coli, Klebsiella pneumoniae, Enterobacter spp, Serratia spp, Proteus spp) should be appropriately covered. This can be achieved by monotherapy with a second or third generation cephalosporin (cefotaxime or ceftriaxone), or by an aminopenicillin plus a β-lactamase inhibitor. Quinolones or a combination of clindamycin and aztreonam are alternatives.

2. Patients with late onset VAP and no risk factors: potentially drug resistant microorganisms must also be taken into account. This is particularly true when mechanical ventilation is required for more than 7 days and against a background of broad spectrum antimicrobial treatment. These include multi-resistant MRSA, GNEB, and Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Acinetobacter spp, as well as Stenotrophomonas maltophilia. Although not proven by randomized studies, it seems prudent to administer combination treatment, including an antipseudomonal penicillin (plus a β-lactamase inhibitor) or a cephalosporin or a carbapenem, and a quinolone (ciprofloxacin) or an aminoglycoside. Vancomycin may be added where MRSA is a concern.

3. Patients with early or late onset VAP and risk factors: treatment is identical to that for late onset VAP without risk factors, except when Legionella spp are suspected in which case these pathogens must also be covered.

The guidelines do not make specific recommendations for non-ventilated patients with nosocomial pneumonia. Instead, patients not meeting severity criteria are treated as early onset VAP with modifications in the presence of additional risk factors. In our view it would be useful to compare this severity based approach with an algorithm that separates pneumonia in the non-intubated and intubated patient, differentiates early and late onset, and considers the presence of risk factors. This is the direction of the recently published German guidelines for the treatment and prevention of nosocomial pneumonia.

This general framework for empirical initial antimicrobial treatment must be modified according to local requirements. Regular updates of data on potential pathogens of VAP indicating trends in microbial and resistance patterns are mandatory. Although data on antimicrobial treatment failures are scarce, we recommend investigating each case. The separate record of these data is particularly useful in detecting patients at risk, as well as microorganisms typically associated with treatment failures. Although few microorganisms are responsible for the vast majority of antimicrobial treatment failures, the distribution of pathogens is widely divergent between centres (fig 4.3).

**CONCLUSION**

Much progress has been made in the understanding of nosocomial pneumonia and this has influenced management guidelines. Nevertheless, important issues in diagnosis and treatment remain unresolved. We argue that the controversy over diagnostic tools should be closed. Instead, every effort should be made to increase our ability to make valid clinical predictions about the presence of VAP and to establish criteria to guide restricting empirical antimicrobial treatment without causing harm to patients. At the same time, more emphasis must be put on local infection control measures such as routine surveillance of pathogens, definition of controlled policies of antimicrobial treatment, and effective implementation of strategies of prevention.
REFERENCES


The acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) is a common clinical disorder characterised by injury to the alveolar epithelial and endothelial barriers of the lung, acute inflammation, and protein rich pulmonary oedema leading to acute respiratory failure. Since its first description by Ashbaugh et al., a considerable volume of both basic and clinical research has led to a more sophisticated appreciation of the pathogenesis and pathophysiology of the syndrome. However, our understanding of the epidemiology and effects of treatments have been hampered by the lack of uniform definitions. Several attempts have been made to provide workable definitions that would be useful in both clinical management and research. This chapter reviews the definitions and epidemiology of ARDS, with particular attention to how changes in defining the syndrome have affected our understanding of the natural history and treatment options.

**Definitions**

**Basic definition**

In 1967 Ashbaugh and colleagues described a clinical syndrome of tachypnoea, hypoxaemia resistant to supplemental oxygen, diffuse alveolar infiltrates, and decreased pulmonary compliance in 12 patients who required positive pressure mechanical ventilation. The onset of the syndrome was acute, typically within hours of the inciting clinical disorder. The majority of patients did not have a history of pulmonary disease. Adequate oxygenation required the use of continuous positive pressure with end expiratory pressures (PEEP) of 5–10 cm H₂O. The earliest radiographic findings were patchy infiltrates indistinguishable from cardiogenic pulmonary oedema that usually became confluent with progressive clinical deterioration. Lung compliance was substantially decreased. Gross lung specimens resembled hepatic tissue with large airways being free from obstruction. Histological examination revealed hyaline membranes in the alveoli with microscopically atelectasis and intra-alveolar haemorrhage similar to the infant respiratory distress syndrome.

In a subsequent paper Petty and Ashbaugh refined and elaborated on what they coined the "adult respiratory distress syndrome". In a review of 40 cases the mechanism of lung injury was either direct (chest trauma, aspiration) or indirect (pancreatitis, sepsis) and, in some cases, was attributed to mechanical ventilation. Despite the heterogeneity of inciting events, the physiological and pathological response of the lung was uniform. The use of PEEP was critical in maintaining acceptable oxygen saturation by reducing the right to left intrapulmonary shunt and increasing the functional residual capacity. Recovery from lung injury could be rapid and complete or could progress to interstitial fibrosis and progressive respiratory failure. Fatalities were primarily due to septic complications.

**Expanded definition**

Over the next two decades the basic definition was thought by many experts to be a hindrance to understanding the syndrome. The definition was not sufficiently specific, was open to varying interpretations, and did not require the clinical aetiology of the syndrome to be specified. Investigators used different criteria to enrol patients in clinical studies making comparison of results across trials difficult. In 1988 Murray and colleagues proposed an expanded definition of ARDS intended to describe whether the syndrome was in an acute or chronic phase, the physiological severity of pulmonary injury, and the primary clinical disorder associated with the development of lung injury (table 5.1). The first part of the definition addressed the clinical course separating acute from chronic cases; patients with a prolonged course (chronic) were presumably more likely to develop pulmonary fibrosis and to have poor outcomes. The second part, the lung injury score (LIS), quantified the severity of lung injury from the degree of arterial hypoxaemia, the level of PEEP, the respiratory compliance, and the radiographic abnormalities (table 5.2). Finally, the cause or associated medical condition was to be specified. This proposal was accompanied by an editorial by Petty endorsing the new definition.

The expanded definition had several advantages. By describing whether patients had an acute course with rapid resolution or a more chronic course, the definition differentiated between the rapidly resolving course typical of ARDS secondary to drug overdoses or pulmonary contusion and the complicated and protracted course of many patients with severe pneumonia or sepsis syndrome. The LIS quantified the severity of lung injury separating patients with severe lung injury (LIS >2.5) from those with mild lung injury (LIS <2.5–0.1). Most importantly, the identification of the cause or associated medical condition addressed the aetiology of lung injury. As the authors argued, grouping all causes of ARDS under an umbrella classification potentially prevented the discovery of beneficial treatments aimed at a particular cause.

**Abbreviations:** ALI, acute lung injury; ARDS, acute respiratory distress syndrome; PEEP, positive end expiratory pressure; PaO₂, arterial oxygen tension; FiO₂, fractional inspired oxygen; PaCO₂, alveolar oxygen tension; LIS, lung injury score; PAOP, pulmonary artery occlusion pressure.
NAECC definition

In 1994 the North American-European Consensus Conference (NAECC) on ARDS proposed a revised definition for acute lung injury (ALI) and ARDS (table 5.3). The panel recognised that accurate estimates of the incidence and outcomes of ARDS were hindered by the lack of a simple uniform definition, especially one that could be used to enrol patients in clinical studies. The panel changed “adult” back to “acute respiratory distress syndrome”, recognising that the syndrome was not limited to adults (the original Ashbaugh report included one 11 year old patient). Mechanical ventilation was not a requirement, although it was anticipated that most clinical trials would only enrol intubated patients. In order to exclude chronic lung disease, the definition required an acute onset of respiratory failure.

The physiological severity of lung injury was addressed by using the term ALI to refer to patients with a PaO2/FiO2 ratio of <300 and ARDS in those with a PaO2/FiO2 ratio of <200. Although this was an arbitrary separation of the clinical spectrum of lung injury, previous studies had suggested that these cut off values were reasonable. The more liberal oxygenation criteria might allow clinical trials to capture patients with lung injury earlier in their course and perhaps facilitate identification of risk factors important in predicting outcomes. In contrast to the definition of Murray et al, the NAECC definition did not incorporate the level of PEEP. There was considerable debate on this issue but it was decided that, for the sake of simplicity, the level of PEEP should not be used to make the diagnosis of ALI or ARDS.

The NAECC definition included exclusion criteria for patients with cardiogenic pulmonary oedema. The pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP), if measured, should be <18 mm Hg and there should be no clinical evidence of left atrial hypertension, although left atrial hypertension might occasionally coexist with ARDS. In each case it would be up to the clinician to assess whether the clinical, radiographic, or physiological abnormalities could be explained primarily by left atrial hypertension. The radiographic criteria for the diagnosis of ALLARDS were simplified to the presence of bilateral opacities consistent with pulmonary oedema. There was no quantification of the radiological abnormalities nor was there an effort to separate ALL from ARDS by radiographic findings. The NAECC definition, as with previous attempts, had limitations (table 5.4). The definition was descriptive and did not address the cause of lung injury. Although it stipulated an acute onset, it did not provide guidelines on how to define acute. Most importantly, the radiological criteria were not sufficiently specific. In a recent study 21 critical care specialists, including seven members of the ARDS Network group of investigators, were asked to evaluate 28 chest radiographs of patients with a PaO2/FiO2 ratio of <300 and to decide if they would qualify for the 1994 definition of ALL. The interobserver statistical agreement was moderate, with substantially worse agreement when analysis was limited to digital radiographs. A similar study showed excellent agreement between one intensive care specialist and a radiologist in diagnosing ALL only after the two had undergone a period of training during which diagnostic discrepancies were discussed and guidelines for interpreting ambiguous radiographs were established.

The NAECC definition does not account for the level of PEEP used, which affects the PaO2/FiO2 ratio. However, there is no simple solution to this issue because the level of PEEP, as well as other ventilator settings, would have to be stipulated in advance before the diagnosis could be made.

Relationship between definitions

Several studies have examined the relationship between the definition of ARDS proposed by Murray et al and that of the NAECC. A prospective trial using strict diagnostic criteria for ARDS as the gold standard evaluated the diagnostic accuracy of the LIS, the NAECC definition, and a modified LIS in identifying patients with ARDS. The modified LIS consisted of two components: a PaO2/FiO2 of ≤174 (corresponding to grade 3 or higher LIS (table 5.2)) and bilateral infiltrates on a chest radiograph. The following diagnostic criteria for ARDS served as the gold standard: concomitant presence of respiratory failure requiring mechanical ventilation; bilateral pulmonary infiltrates; PaO2/PaO2 <0.2; PAOP >18 mm Hg; and static respiratory system compliance <50 ml/cm H2O. One hundred and twenty three patients with at least one of seven “at risk”
The importance of standard definitions and a mechanistic approach to enrolling patients in clinical trials are apparent in the results of two recent randomised multicentre trials. The first, conducted by the ARDS Network, evaluated the benefits of a low tidal volume strategy of mechanical ventilation and found an absolute reduction in the primary outcome of death prior to hospital discharge of 9% using lower tidal volumes (22% relative reduction in mortality). Patients were enrolled using the 1994 definition and the benefit of a protective ventilation strategy was maintained in all subsets of patients with ALI/ARDS. This was the first large trial to show the benefit of any intervention in ALI/ARDS.

The importance of identifying the mechanism of lung injury is borne out by a recent trial of recombinant human activated protein C in severe sepsis. A 96 hour infusion of protein C resulted in an absolute reduction in mortality of 6.1% (20% relative reduction) in a large international multicentre trial; 54% of the 1690 patients had a pulmonary source of sepsis and 75% required mechanical ventilation on entry into the study. Although the study did not report the number of patients who met the criteria for ALI/ARDS, it is likely that most did since ARDS is the most common cause of respiratory failure in sepsis and sepsis is the most common predisposing factor for the development of ARDS.

Based on this study, it is likely that a trial of protein C in patients with lung injury due to sepsis will show a treatment benefit while the same trial in patients with ARDS due to trauma or fat emboli may not. As more is learned about the epidemiology and pathophysiology of ARDS, identifying the cause of injury in designing treatment trials will become increasingly critical.

**Epidemiology**

**Incidence**

The incidence of ALI and ARDS has been difficult to establish. Most studies were conducted before the NAECC definition was proposed and used different criteria to enrol patients. Defining the population at risk in a given study has been equally problematic. Accurate measurement of disease incidence requires knowledge of the number of people with the disease within a defined population at risk for developing it. Prospective trials must account for the catchment area of the hospitals studied; each hospital’s catchment area may overlap with that of several other hospitals.

In 1972 the National Heart and Lung Institute (NHLI) task force estimated an incidence of 75 cases of ARDS per 100 000 population per year. Several subsequent studies have estimated a much lower annual incidence of 1.5–13.5 cases per 100 000 population (table 5.5). There are several reasons why the number of cases may have been overestimated. The task force predated the widespread acceptance of the definition of ARDS and used a broad definition of lung injury that included conditions such as renal failure and volume overload. In addition, the population at risk was not clearly

---

**Significance of definitions in clinical trials**

The NAECC updated its recommendations in 1998. Although no formal changes were made, the Committee emphasised the importance of addressing epidemiological and aetiological differences between patients when designing clinical trials. Several prospective studies had identified risk factors present at the onset of lung injury that predicted poorer outcomes. Clinical trial organisers would need to ensure an equal distribution of these risk factors in their experimental and control arms. They also encouraged further research focused on identifying markers predictive of progression to or poor outcomes from lung injury. Previous definitions had relied on abnormalities of lung physiology to grade injury; however, neither the initial LIS nor the initial PaO2/FiO2 ratio was predictive of mortality in clinical trials. Some biological markers, on the other hand, had already been proved to be useful in identifying patients at risk for poor outcomes. For example, raised levels of procollagen III peptide in early bronchoalveolar lavage and pulmonary oedema fluid samples predicted a protracted clinical course with progression to pulmonary fibrosis in patients with ALI/ARDS, and increased levels of von Willebrand factor antigen in plasma predicted the development of lung injury in patients with non-pulmonary sepsis syndrome. Also, a recent study reported that higher levels of von Willebrand factor antigens in the plasma of ALI/ARDS patients independently predicted mortality early in the clinical course.

---

**Table 5.4: Strengths and limitations of the different definitions of ARDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Strengths</th>
<th>Limitations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Petty and Ashbaugh (1971)</td>
<td>Detailed clinical description of the hallmarks of ARDS which remains relevant today</td>
<td>No formal criteria for identification of patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murray et al (1988)</td>
<td>Three part definition evaluates chronicity, severity, and cause of lung injury</td>
<td>Lung injury score has not been predictive of mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North American-European Consensus Conference (1994)</td>
<td>Simple criteria which are easy to apply in the clinical setting</td>
<td>No formal criteria to exclude cardiogenic pulmonary oedema</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Diagnoses were followed prospectively for the development of ARDS. The diagnostic accuracy in the “at risk” population (true positive + true negative/total number of patients) was 90% for the LIS definition and 97% for both the modified LIS and the NAECC definitions (p=0.03). The authors concluded that the three scoring systems identified similar populations when applied to patients with clearly defined at risk diagnoses.

A more recent study assessed the agreement between the definitions of Murray et al and the NAECC in diagnosing ARDS in a prospective trial of 118 patients comparing ventilation strategies. The incidence using the LIS was 62% while that using the NAECC definition was 55%. Statistical agreement between the two definitions was moderate and improved when analysis was limited to patients who had undergone compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%). A more liberal PaO2/FiO2 ratio decreased agreement, as did increasing the LIS threshold diagnostic of ARDS to 3 or decreasing it to 2. Omitting data on compliance measurements (65%).
A three year study conducted in the Canary Islands was unique in that all patients requiring mechanical ventilation were cared for at one hospital. Using a PaO2/FiO2 ratio of <110 to define ARDS, the population incidence was 1.5 cases per 100,000 population. A PaO2/FiO2 cut off of <150 resulted in an incidence of 3.5 cases per 100,000 population. Although the study strictly defined the population at risk, extrapolation of incidence data from this young population (average age 32) to an urban setting is questionable. A prospective three year study in Utah using a PaO2/FiO2 ratio of <0.2 (corresponding to a PaO2/FiO2 ratio of <110) to define ARDS estimated an annual incidence of 4.8–8.3 cases per 100,000 population. The authors recorded all cases of ARDS in six Utah hospitals and estimated the number of cases in the remaining 34 acute care hospitals using ICD-9 codes. Although the investigators made corrections for the population migrating in and out of Utah as well as for visitors developing ARDS, the incomplete sampling of hospitals and the use of ICD-9 codes weakened the study. Also, the incidence of alcohol and tobacco use is probably much less in Utah than in other states. A 2 month prospective study in Berlin found an annual incidence of 3 cases per 100,000 population using the expanded definition proposed by Murray et al. The population of Berlin was the study population and 97% of all intensive care units were surveyed. No corrections were made for migration in and out of the catchment area. Finally, a prospective 2 month study in Sweden, Denmark, and Iceland using the NAEC definition found an annual incidence of ARDS and of ALI of 13.5 per 100,000 and 17.9 cases per 100,000, respectively. The annual incidence of ARDS using the LIS was 7.6 cases per 100,000 population. Interestingly, only 71 of 110 patients who met the criteria for ARDS using the LIS also met the criteria using a PaO2/FiO2 ratio of <200.

The true incidence of ALL/ARDS is currently unknown, but may not be as high as the 1972 NHLI estimate nor as low as estimates made in the Canary Islands or Berlin. A definitive study using the NAEC definition has been completed at the University of Washington and preliminary results suggest that the original NHLI estimate may have been reasonable.

### Incidence of ARDS in patients with known risk factors

Lung injury can be caused by direct or indirect mechanisms (Table 5.6). Identifying risk factors for the development of ALL/ARDS is particularly important in evaluating treatments that may prevent progression to lung injury in high risk populations. Three prospective studies from the early 1980s evaluated the incidence of ARDS in patients with known risk factors. In each study investigators followed patients with respiratory failure and clinical conditions thought to predispose to ARDS for the development of the syndrome. All three used stricter PaO2/FiO2 ratios to diagnose ARDS than the NAEC definition.

In the first of two studies from Seattle, 136 patients with one or more risk factors were followed for the development of ARDS defined by a PaO2/FiO2 ratio of <150. The risk factors were sepsis syndrome, aspiration of gastric contents, pulmonary contusion, multiple transfusions, near drowning, pancreatitis, multiple major fractures, and prolonged hypotension not due to sepsis or cardiogenic shock. Multiple major fractures were defined as either fractures of two or more major long bones, an unstable pelvic fracture, or one major long bone fracture and a major pelvic fracture. Multiple transfusions were defined as infusion of 10 or more units of packed red blood cells or whole blood within a 12 hour period. Although 34% of the patients identified developed ARDS, the majority of patients who developed ARDS during the study time frame were missed. Of the patients captured by the study, those with sepsis and aspiration pneumonia had the highest risk of developing ARDS (38% and 30% risk, respectively), followed by patients receiving multiple blood transfusions and pulmonary contusions (24% and 17% risk, respectively). Patients with more than one risk factor were at increased risk for developing the syndrome. Of the patients who developed ARDS, 76% had done so within 2–24 hours of the inciting event and 93% by 72 hours.

### Table 5.5 Annual incidence of the acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) and acute lung injury (ALI) in different clinical studies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Criteria used to diagnose ALL/ARDS</th>
<th>Incidence (cases/100 000 population/year)</th>
<th>Study limitations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NHLI task force27</td>
<td></td>
<td>75</td>
<td>• Broad definition of respiratory distress syndrome including patients with volume overload</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canary Islands21</td>
<td>PaO2/FiO2 &lt;110</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>• Mean age of study population was 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PaO2/FiO2 &lt;150</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>• Non-urban setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utah20</td>
<td>PaO2/FiO2 &lt;110</td>
<td>4.8–8.3</td>
<td>• Incomplete sampling of hospitals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PaO2/FiO2 &lt;200</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Use of ICD-9 codes to diagnose ARDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berlin24</td>
<td>Lung injury score &gt;2.5</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>• 2 month study may miss seasonal variation in incidence of ALL/ARDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lung injury score &gt;1.75–&lt;2.5</td>
<td>17.1</td>
<td>• No correction for migration in and out of study population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scandinavia29</td>
<td>PaO2/FiO2 &lt;300</td>
<td>17.9</td>
<td>• 2 month study may miss seasonal variation in incidence of ALL/ARDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PaO2/FiO2 &lt;200</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>• No correction for migration in and out of study population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lung injury score &gt;2.5</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 5.6 Clinical disorders associated with the development of ALL/ARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Direct</th>
<th>Indirect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common</td>
<td>• Aspiration pneumonia</td>
<td>• Sepsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pneumonia</td>
<td>• Severe trauma with prolonged hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Reperfusion injury</td>
<td>• Multiple transfusions of blood products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less common</td>
<td>• Inhalation injury</td>
<td>• Acute pancreatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pulmonary contusion</td>
<td>• Cardiopulmonary bypass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Fat emboli</td>
<td>• Drug overdose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Near drowning</td>
<td>• Disseminated intravascular coagulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Reperfusion injury</td>
<td>• Burns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Head injury</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The second study from Seattle defined ARDS as a PaO2/FiO2 ratio of <150 or <200 in patients on PEEP and captured 80% of patients who developed ARDS during the study. Sepsis syndrome was again associated with the highest incidence of ARDS (41%), followed by multiple transfusions (36%), aspiration pneumonia (22%), and pulmonary contusion (22%). Interestingly, massive transfusions were equally likely to cause ARDS in medical patients as in patients with trauma.

A study from Denver identified risk factors as cardiopulmonary bypass, burn, bacteraemia, hypertransfusion, fracture, pneumonia requiring care in the intensive care unit (ICU), aspiration, and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC). ARDS was diagnosed in patients with a PaO2/Pao2 ratio of <0.2, PaO2 <12 mm Hg, and a static pulmonary compliance of <50 ml/cm H2O. Aspiration pneumonia was associated with a 35% incidence of developing ARDS, followed by DIC (22%), and pneumonia requiring ICU care (12%). The study missed 22% of patients who developed ARDS, most of whom had presumed sepsis. Bacteraemia, defined as two positive blood cultures, was associated with a 3.8% risk of ARDS.

The data from these prospective and other studies' identify sepsis as the most common risk factor for developing ARDS, followed by aspiration pneumonia, pneumonia, trauma, and multiple transfusions. The relative incidence of ALI/ARDS with each risk factor will depend on the exact definitions used; for example, if patients with pneumonia and sepsis syndrome are classified as pneumonia, then the incidence with pneumonia will be greater. Overall, approximately 20–40% of patients with well established risk factors and respiratory failure develop ARDS, and the more risk factors in any individual, the greater the likelihood of developing the syndrome. As with most of the epidemiological data currently available, these numbers may change as newer studies use the NAECC criteria to define ALI/ARDS.

In addition to the risk factors discussed above, recent reports have identified additional conditions that influence the susceptibility of individuals to developing lung injury. In a prospective study of 351 patients the incidence of ARDS with one of seven known “at risk” diagnoses was compared in patients with and without a history of chronic alcohol abuse. Experimental data demonstrating the activating effect of alcohol on neutrophil adherence, chemotaxis, and phagocytosis led investigators to speculate that patients who chronically abuse alcohol would be at a higher risk for developing ARDS. The incidence of ARDS was 43% in patients with a history of chronic alcohol abuse compared with 22% in the control group. Patients with higher APACHE II scores at the time of the “at risk” diagnosis also had a significantly higher incidence of ARDS. Both the history of chronic alcohol abuse and the APACHE II score remained significant with multivariate analysis.

The same investigators hypothesised that patients with diabetes mellitus may be protected from ARDS due to the impaired neutrophil function associated with hyperglycaemia. In a study of 113 patients with septic shock, the incidence of ARDS was 25% in diabetic and 47% in non-diabetic patients. After multivariate analysis adjusting for age, a history of cirrhosis, and source of infection, the difference in incidence remained significant. Mortality was not significantly different in the two groups. This was the first study to identify a risk factor that decreased the risk of developing ARDS.

Clinical risk factors predictive of a poor outcome

Several prospective trials using the NAECC definition have identified risk factors that are independent predictors of mortality (table 5.7). Each study enrolled a slightly different study population which may contribute to differences in risk factor identified. In a prospective trial of 123 medical and surgical (not trauma) patients with lung injury, liver dysfunction, sepsis and non-pulmonary organ system dysfunction during the period between hospitalisation and admission to the ICU were associated with significantly increased mortality. A study of 107 medical intensive care patients with lung injury found sepsis, cirrhosis, organ transplantation, HIV infection, active cancer, and age above 65 years to be independent predictors of mortality. A French study of 259 patients with ARDS in a medical ICU found cirrhosis, sepsis, the duration of mechanical ventilation prior to ARDS, oxygenation index (mean airway pressure × FiO2 × 100/Pao2), the mechanism of lung injury, and the occurrence of right ventricular dysfunction to be independent predictors of death. A Scandinavian study of 132 intensive care patients in three countries (including medical, surgical and neurological patients) found chronic liver disease, a PaO2/FiO2 ratio of <100, and age to be independent predictors of death.

In most studies the initial oxygenation abnormality defined by the PaO2/FiO2 ratio did not predict mortality unless it was grossly abnormal. Similarly, the initial severity of lung injury defined by the LIS has not predicted mortality, although in one study the LIS measured after 4 days predicted a complicated clinical course.

Although identification of independent predictors of mortality using multivariate analysis in any single study depends on which risk factors are evaluated, cumulative data convincingly show that patients with ALI/ARDS and sepsis, liver disease, non-pulmonary organ dysfunction, or advanced age have higher mortality rates. Equal distribution of these risk factors among experimental and control groups is essential when enrolling patients in clinical trials.

CONCLUSION

The understanding of ARDS and its definition continues to evolve as we learn more about its epidemiology and pathophysiology. The first two decades of research after Ashbaugh and Petty’s classic articles describing ARDS were hampered by the lack of uniform definitions. The expanded definition of ARDS proposed by Murray and colleagues in 1988 incorporating the chronicity, severity, and cause of lung injury...
injury represented a turning point towards a more quantita-
tive approach. The NAEC 1994 definition simplified the diagnostict
criteria proposed by Murray and colleagues by eliminat-
ing the level of PEEP from the oxygenation criteria and the measure-
ment of respiratory compliance, and reducing the chest radiographic inclusion criteria to the presen-
tence of bilateral opacities consistent with pulmonary oedema. As with
the definition of Murray et al, the NAEC definition graded lung
injury by defining different oxygenation criteria for ALI and ARDS. In the past decade the application of these two
definitions has led to substantial progress in the under-
standing of the natural history of lung injury. Although the two cri-
teria define overlapping populations with a similar prognos-
tic value, it is not clear whether conclusions generated using one definition
can be extrapolated to populations defined by the other. It is hoped that future trials will use the NAEC definition
exclusively.

Several aspects of the definition of ALI/ARDS need further refinement. Although initial oxygenation indices have little
prognostic value, the more liberal oxygenation criteria describing ALI appear to identify patients with similar
background characteristics and prognosis at an earlier stage of the illness. If there is no prognostic or epidemiological difference
between ALI and ARDS patients, then the two categories should be combined. On the other hand, in certain subsets
such as trauma, patients with ALI may have better a progno-
sis than those with ARDS. While the radiographic criteria of
the NAEC definition are easy to apply, recent data suggest that
there is significant interobserver variability. Although a
more standardised approach is desirable, complex schemas quantifying the severity of infiltrates in different quadrants
have no prognostic value. It therefore appears that an approach that combines the simplicity of the NAEC definition
with more standardised and specific criteria would be ideal.

The risk of an individual developing lung injury and its prognosis will be more predictable as more accurate physio-
 logical markers are identified. Interestingly, a recent large
prospective clinical study of 179 patients has found that a
markedly raised dead space fraction (0.58) occurs early in the
course of ARDS and is independently associated with mortality.44 As the pathogenesis and epidemiology of lung
injury are elucidated, treatment may be individualised around
the mechanism of injury and the clinical characteristics of
each patient.

REFERENCES

1 Ashbaugh DG, Bigelow DB, Petty TL, et al. Acute respiratory distress in
2 Ware LB, Matthay MA. The acute respiratory distress syndrome. N Engl
3 Petty TL, Ashbaugh DG. The adult respiratory distress syndrome. Clinical
features, factors influencing prognosis and principles of management.
4 Murray JF, Matthay MA, Luce JM, et al. An expanded definition of the
5 Bernard GR, Artigas A, Brigham KL, et al. The American-European
Consensus Conference on ARDS. Definitions, mechanisms, relevant
outcomes, and clinical trial coordination. Am J Respir Crit Care Med
with acute respiratory distress syndrome. Physiology and outcome. Am
7 Rubenfeld GD, Caldwell E, Granton J, et al. Interobserver variability in
applying a radiographic definition for ARDS. Chest 1999;116:1347–
53.
8 Meade MO, Cook R, Guyatt GH, et al. Interobserver variation in
interpreting chest radiographs for the diagnosis of acute respiratory
9 Moss M, Goodman PL, Haining M, et al. Establishing the relative
accuracy of three new definitions of the adult respiratory distress
10 Meade MO, Guyatt GH, Cook RJ, et al. Agreement between alternative
classification of acute respiratory distress syndrome. Am J Respir Crit
Care Med 2001;163:490–3.

definitions for sepsis, septic shock, acute lung injury and acute
respiratory distress syndrome: time for a reevaluation. Crit Care Med
12 Artigas A, Bernard GR, Carlet J, et al. The American-European
Consensus Conference on ARDS, Part 2. Ventilatory, pharmacologic,
supportive therapy, study design strategies and issues related to recovery
13 Doyle RL, Szalanski N, Modin GW, et al. Identification of patients with
acute lung injury. Predictors of mortality. Am J Respir Crit Care Med
14 Monchi M, Bellissant F, Cariou A, et al. Early predictive factors of
survival in the acute respiratory distress syndrome. A multivariate
15 Moss M, Buccheri, Moore FA, et al. The role of chronic alcohol abuse in
the development of acute respiratory distress syndrome in adults. JAMA
16 Zilberberg MD, Epstein SK. Acute lung injury in the medical ICU:
comorbid conditions, age, etiology, and hospital outcome. Am J Respir
syndrome: definitions, severity and clinical outcome. An analysis of 101
18 Chesnutt AN, Matthay MA, Tibayran FA, et al. Early detection of type III
procollagen peptide in acute lung injury. Pathogenetic and prognostic
19 Clark JG, Milberg JA, Steinberg KP, et al. Type III procollagen peptide
in the adult respiratory distress syndrome. Association of increased
peptide levels in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid with increased risk for
factor antigen is an early plasma marker of acute lung injury in
21 Pugin J, Verghese G, Widmer MC, et al. The alveolar space is the site of
increased inflammatory and proinflammatory reactions in the early phase of
22 Ware LB, Conner ER, Matthay MA. Von Willebrand factor antigen is an
independent marker of poor outcome in patients with early acute lung
23 ARDS Network. Ventilation with lower tidal volumes as compared with
traditional tidal volumes for acute lung injury and the acute respiratory
distress syndrome. The Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome Network.
24 Eisner MD. Thompson T, Hudson UD, et al. Efficacy of low tidal volume
ventilation in patients with different clinical risk factors for acute lung
injury and the acute respiratory distress syndrome. Am J Respir Crit Care
27 Matthay MA. Severe sepsis: a new treatment with both antiinflammatory
28 National Heart and Lung Institute. Task force on problems, research
approaches, needs: the lung program. Washington, DC: Department of
29 Lewandowski K, Metz J, Dechantmann C, et al. Incidence, severity, and
mortality of acute respiratory failure in Berlin, Germany. Am J Respir Crit
acute respiratory failure and acute respiratory distress syndrome in
Sweden, Denmark, and Iceland. The ARF Study Group. Am J Respir Crit
31 Thomson GE, Morris AH. Incidence of the adult respiratory distress
32 Villar J, Slutsky AS. The incidence of the adult respiratory distress
33 Webster NR, Cohen AT, Nunn JF. Adult respiratory distress syndrome:
34 Hudson LD, Steinberg KP. Epidemiology of acute lung injury and ARDS.
35 Steinberg KP, Hudson LD. Acute lung injury and acute respiratory
36 Fowler AA, Hamman RF, Good JT, et al. Adult respiratory distress
37 Hudson LD, Milberg JA, Anard D, et al. Clinical risks for development of
the acute respiratory distress syndrome. Am J Respir Crit Care Med
1995;151:293–301.
38 Pepe PE, Potkin RT, Russ DH, et al. Clinical predictors of the adult
39 Hyers TM. Predictive value of survival and mortality in patients with
adult respiratory distress syndrome. New Horiz 1993;1:466–70.
40 Hallgren B, Forsgren A. Effect of alcohol on chemotaxis, adherence
and phagocytosis of human polymorphonuclear leukocytes. Acta Med
41 Moss M, Guidot DM, Steinberg KP, et al. Diabetic patients have a
decreased incidence of acute respiratory distress syndrome. Crit Care
6 The pathogenesis of acute lung injury/acute respiratory distress syndrome

G J Bellingan

Lung injury is the term used to describe the pulmonary response to a broad range of injuries occurring either directly to the lung or as the consequence of injury or inflammation at other sites in the body. Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) represents the more severe end of the spectrum of this condition in which there are widespread inflammatory changes throughout the lung, usually accompanied by aggressive fibrosis. The pathogenesis of lung injury is not well understood. We do not know why some people progress to ARDS while others who sustain indistinguishable injuries remain relatively unaffected. ARDS is unique among pulmonary fibrotic conditions in that the fibrosis resolves almost completely in many cases; once again the mechanisms for this are not understood. It is now well recognised that some of the damage is created and exacerbated by mechanical ventilation. However, mortality from ARDS has improved in certain centres over the last 10 years, predicting major changes in ventilatory practice; the reasons for this improvement in mortality are thus also not clear.

ARDS often occurs as part of a wider picture of multiorgan dysfunction syndrome (MODS). Central to the pathogenesis are an explosive inflammatory process and the reparative responses invoked in an attempt to heal this. This chapter will outline the pathological processes which occur during ARDS and their evolution as our understanding of the inflammatory, immune, and fibroproliferative responses has grown. It will describe the underlying cellular and molecular processes, correlate these with the clinical picture, and highlight how such insights can lead to novel therapeutic approaches.

DEFINITIONS

Lung injury (acute lung injury (ALI) and ARDS) is currently defined clinically by gas exchange and chest radiographic abnormalities which occur shortly after a known predisposing injury and in the absence of heart failure. The definition and range of predisposing conditions are discussed in chapter 5.

The pathophysiology of ARDS is driven by an aggressive inflammatory reaction. Indirect injury occurs as part of a systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), which can be due to infective or non-infective causes such as pancreatitis or trauma; when SIRS is caused by infection it is called sepsis. SIRS with organ dysfunction is called severe sepsis and, in the presence of significant hypotension, septic shock. ARDS can thus occur in conjunction with failure of other organs, the multiorgan dysfunction syndrome (MODS). A number of endogenous anti-inflammatory mechanisms are also initiated to counterbalance the effects of such an aggressive inflammatory response and this is termed the compensatory anti-inflammatory response syndrome (CARS), although these responses too may be excessive and contribute to a state of immunoparesis.

PATHOLOGY

Lung injury is an evolving condition and the pathological features of ARDS are typically described as passing through three overlapping phases (table 6.1)—an inflammatory or exudative phase, a proliferative phase and, lastly, a fibrotic phase. These phases are complicated by other variables—for example, episodes of nosocomial pneumonia and the deleterious effects of ventilator induced lung injury. Moreover, the initiating insults themselves may influence the pathophysiological picture. Radiographic differences have been identified between patients with ARDS arising from direct pulmonary injuries compared with those from indirect injuries. Likewise, a small study has suggested greater areas of alveolar collapse and oedema in patients dying with ARDS from direct rather than indirect injuries. Although these differences may translate into differences in outcome, no clear mechanistic differences between these groups have been identified. A recent study has suggested, however, that lung cyclo-oxygenase-2 (COX-2) gene expression (a gene implicated in the early proinflammatory response) is only induced by indirect mechanisms related to the systemic response to endotoxin rather than directly in response to inhaled endotoxin.

Exudative phase

Typically, this lasts for the first week after the onset of symptoms. The histological changes are termed diffuse alveolar damage. At necropsy examination the lungs are heavy, rigid and, when sectioned, do not exude fluid because of its high protein content. Bachofen and Wiebel were among the first to study the histopathological changes in detail in patients who died with ARDS. An acute stage commencing within the first 24 hours of symptoms was marked by significant proteinaceous and often markedly haemorrhagic interstitial and alveolar oedema with hyaline membranes. The hyaline membranes are eosinophilic containing fibrin, immunoglobulin, and complement. The microvascular and alveolar barriers have focal areas of damage and the alveolar wall is oedematous with areas of necrosis within the epithelial lining, although the basal lamina is intact initially. The early endothelial lesions are more subtle, containing areas of necrosis and denuded spaces usually filled with fibrin clot. Neutrophils are found increasingly during the initial phases in capillaries, interstitial tissue, and progressively within airspaces.
Typically occupying the second 2 weeks after the onset of respiratory failure, the proliferative phase is characterised by organisation of the exudates and by fibrosis. The lung remains heavy and solid, and macroscopically the integrity of the lung architecture becomes steadily more deranged. The capillary network is damaged and there is a progressive decline in the profile of capillaries in tissue sections; later, intimal proliferation is evident in many small vessels further reducing the luminal area. The interstitial space becomes grossly dilated, necrosis of type I pneumocytes exposes areas of epithelial basement membrane, and the alveolar lumen fills with leucocytes, red cells, fibrin, and cell debris. Alveolar type II cells proliferate in an attempt to cover the denuded epithelial surfaces and differentiate into type I cells. Fibroblasts become apparent in the interstitial space and later in the alveolar lumen. These processes result in extreme narrowing or even obliteration of the airspaces. Fibrin and cell debris are progressively replaced by collagen fibrils. The main site of fibrosis is the intra-alveolar space, but it also occurs within the interstitium.

**Fibrotic phase**

This can begin from day 10 after initiating injury. Macroscopically, the lungs have a cobblestoned character due to scarring. The vasculature is grossly deranged with vessels narrowed by myointimal thickening and mural fibrosis. The microscopic events occurring in the repair phase are not well documented, mainly because of a paucity of histological data as patients recover. Some insights have been obtained from bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL), radiology, and from animal models. BAL confirms a marked decline in neutrophils and a relative accumulation of lymphocytes and macrophages. The most dramatic, although unpredictable, changes are those of lung collagen. Total lung collagen content may double within 2 weeks, but this burden can be eliminated and many, albeit small, studies show that survivors can return to relatively normal lung function. Interestingly, although the severity of pathological changes in the first few weeks (hyaline membrane, airspace organisation, or cellularity) do not seem to correlate with late functional recovery, the degree of fibrosis is a key predictor of outcome. High levels of procollagen peptides detected early in ARDS have been repeatedly shown to predict a poor outcome. Moreover, established fibrosis reduces lung compliance thereby increasing the work of breathing, decreasing the tidal volume, and resulting in CO₂ retention. Also, because of the alveolar obliteration and interstitial thickening, gas exchange is reduced which contributes to hypoxia and ventilator dependence. Although late deaths from ARDS have been ascribed mainly to sepsis rather than progressive hypoxia, sepsis is a common complication in these patients. It is usually the consequence of ventilator associated pneumonia or other nosocomial infections related to their ventilator dependence.

Recent evidence suggests that there is a much greater overlap of the inflammatory and fibroproliferative phases than previously thought, and many mediators are common to both processes. The fibroproliferative response begins remarkably early with N-terminal procollagen III peptide levels, a marker for collagen turnover, being raised in BAL fluid within 24 hours of ventilation for ARDS. Myofibroblast cells also show an early increase in the alveolar walls, and BAL fluid from ARDS patients within 48 hours of diagnosis is intensely mitogenic for fibroblasts. This all suggests that the fibrosis characteristic of ARDS may not be a late event but is switched on at a very early stage. This is particularly important as the inflammatory and fibrotic processes, although closely overlapping, appear to be separately regulated, thus offering the possibility for early directed treatments against fibrosis independent of the effects on inflammation.

**PATHOGENESIS**

Lung injury is initiated by a specific insult but can be exacerbated by inappropriate mechanical ventilatory strategies (reviewed in chapter 8). Briefly, alveolar overdistension can generate a proinflammatory response which is exacerbated by repetitive opening and closing of alveoli as occurs through the use of inappropriately low levels of positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP). Indeed, overdistension or recurrent opening/closing of alveoli can also induce structural damage to the lung. The effect of high inspired concentrations of oxygen on the disease process is uncertain, particularly in humans. However, prolonged exposure to 100% oxygen is fatal in most animal models, producing neutrophil influx and alveolar oedema that can be blocked in rodents using anti-inflammatory strategies such as inhaled low dose carbon monoxide.

The main players in the inflammatory process are neutrophils and multiple mediator cascades. The fibroblast is key in the fibroproliferative response and is the target of regulators of matrix deposition. A complex interplay of regulatory cytokines counteracts the inflammatory mediators; similarly, matrix deposition is balanced by the actions of the metalloproteases. There is no uniform response to injury: some patients

### Table 6.1 Summary of some histopathological changes in ARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Macroscopic</th>
<th>Exudative phase</th>
<th>Proliferative phase</th>
<th>Fibrotic phase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heavy, rigid, dark</td>
<td>Heavy, grey</td>
<td>Cobblestoned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microscopic</td>
<td>Hyaline membranes</td>
<td>Barrier disruption</td>
<td>Fibrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oedema</td>
<td>Oedema</td>
<td>Macrophages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neutrophils</td>
<td>Alveolar type II cell proliferation</td>
<td>Lymphocytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Epithelial-endothelial damage</td>
<td>Myofibroblast infiltration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasculature</td>
<td>Local thrombus</td>
<td>Loss of capillaries</td>
<td>Myointimal thickening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pulmonary hypertension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
develop ARDS, some ALL, and some do not develop pulmonary symptoms at all. The reasons for this are not clear but may be partly genetic. There is evidence for a genetic susceptibility to sepsis and, recently, to ARDS itself.\(^5\)\(^6\)\(^7\)

Because of the difficulties in obtaining histological samples in humans, studies have been undertaken in animals and have provided a valuable understanding of the mechanisms driving lung injury. It is important to be aware of the limitations of these models as animals differ in their sensitivity to the initiating insult (especially endotoxin) and in their pulmonary responses. The timing and severity of the insults and, especially, the degree of subsequent resuscitation also do not mirror the clinical condition. Models include direct challenge to the lung such as bleomycin, endotoxin or acid aspiration, surfactant washout and oxygen toxicity, or intravenous challenges including endotoxin, complement or microemboli: all have features in common with the human counterpart including inflammatory cell influx and endothelial damage.\(^8\)\(^9\) Animals challenged with endotoxin develop endothelial and epithelial barrier dysfunction although the endothelium appears to be more sensitive than the epithelium, whereas in humans it is the epithelium that shows greater damage.\(^8\) Animal models have also been used to examine the later stages of ARDS. The best are studies in primates exposed to high concentrations of oxygen which showed enlarged airspaces, thickened alveolar walls and interstitial fibrosis, and in the survivors there was decreased alveolarisation and bronchopulmonary dysplasia.\(^9\)

**INFLAMMATION**

With initiation of inflammation there is increased leucocyte production and rapid recruitment to the inflamed site. There is also activation of mediator cascades including the production of cytokines, chemokines, acute phase proteins, free radicals, complement, coagulation pathway components, and focal upregulation of adhesion molecule expression. The “anti-inflammatory” response includes the glucocorticoids, cytokines (interleukin (IL)-4, IL-10 and IL-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1ra)) and other mechanisms such as shedding of adhesion molecules.\(^9\)\(^10\)

**The neutrophil**

This is the dominant leucocyte found both in BAL fluid and in histological specimens from patients with ARDS.\(^9\) In many animal models the degree of lung injury is reduced dramatically if neutrophil influx is ablated, although this is not a universal finding.\(^9\)\(^10\) However, ARDS can develop in neutropenic patients, hence neutrophils are believed to be an important but not essential component of the injurious response.\(^10\) Neutrophils cause cell damage though the production of free radicals, inflammatory mediators, and proteases. Excessive quantities of neutrophil products including elastase, collagenase, reactive oxygen species, and cytokines such as tumour necrosis factor \(\alpha\) (TNF-\(\alpha\)) have been found in patients with ARDS.\(^9\)\(^10\)\(^11\)\(^12\)\(^13\)\(^14\)\(^15\) Recent studies with mice deficient in neutrophil elastase suggest that this enzyme may be an important mediator of damage to the alveolar epithelium and the progression to fibrosis.\(^11\) Adhesion molecules, notably \(\beta\) integrins, mediate neutrophil binding to the pulmonary endothelium. This process is believed to promote leucocyte induced lung injury although some investigators suggest that adhesion molecules have a diminished role in the pulmonary compared with the systemic circulation.\(^5\)\(^6\) Adhesion molecules also modulate activation and mediator release by neutrophils. In a landmark study Folkesson and Matthey induced pulmonary injury in the presence of \(\beta\) integrin blocking antibodies and demonstrated that, while neutrophil migration still occurred, a number of indices of inflammation were reduced.\(^9\) Neutrophil activation leads to cytoskeletal changes that reduce cell deformability and slow their transit time through the lung capillary bed, providing an integrin independent mechanism whereby neutrophil contact with the pulmonary endothelium is avoided.\(^9\) Other inflammatory cells including macrophages and, later, lymphocytes are involved, while platelets may exacerbate the vascular injury and endothelial cells themselves are capable of producing many damaging mediators of inflammation.

**Inflammatory mediators**

The inflammatory process is driven in part by cytokines including TNF-\(\alpha\) and IL-1\(\beta\), IL-6, and IL-8. All have been found in BAL fluid and plasma of patients with ARDS.\(^5\)\(^6\)\(^7\)\(^8\) TNF-\(\alpha\) and IL-1\(\beta\) can both produce an ARDS-like condition when administered to rodents. They are produced by inflammatory cells and can promote neutrophil-endothelial adhesion, microvascular leakage, and amplify other proinflammatory responses. Despite their profile in the septic response, the importance of these cytokines in the pathogenesis of ARDS is unclear. Levels of TNF-\(\alpha\) are not uniformly increased in patients with lung injury and anti-TNF-\(\alpha\) and IL-1 therapies have been disappointing. The increase in TNF-\(\alpha\) levels occurs very early in the clinical course and may be missed by the time of presentation, although anti-TNF-\(\alpha\) therapies can still be of benefit in some cases of sepsis.\(^9\)\(^10\) The huge redundancy in the proinflammatory mediator systems suggests that the search for a “common pathway” susceptible to inhibition may be too simplistic.\(^9\) Many proinflammatory mediators including endotoxin, proinflammatory cytokines, vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), high mobility group-I protein, and thrombin are implicated in the increased vascular permeability that contributes to oedema in lung injury.\(^9\) The balance of “anti-inflammatory” cytokines and mediators must also be considered. There is now good experimental evidence that mediators such as IL-1ra, soluble TNF receptors (sTNF-R), IL-4, IL-10, and even other molecules such as carbon monoxide at very low concentrations are powerful downregulators of the inflammatory response.\(^9\)\(^10\)

The intense neutrophilic infiltrate has led to a search for the chemotactic factors responsible. Early studies implicated complement; however, more recently, the focus has been on chemokines. IL-8 levels are raised in the BAL fluid of patients at risk who ultimately develop ARDS.\(^5\) It is a powerful neutrophil chemoattractant derived from alveolar macrophages and other cells that is regulated by hypoxia/hyperoxia.\(^9\) Another neutrophil chemoattractant, ENA-78, may account for IL-8 independent neutrophil adhesion in ARDS. MIF, a neuropeptide, is increased in ARDS but its role is unclear.

Animal model work suggests that free radicals are fundamental to the tissue damage resulting from proinflammatory stimuli and that antioxidants, including glutathione and superoxide dismutase, are important protective mechanisms. Similarly, in humans oxidant stress is increased and plasma antioxidant levels are reduced in patients with ARDS.\(^9\)\(^10\) Nitric oxide may play a role in septic lung injury as nitrotyrosine, a product derived from peroxynitrite, is found in increased amounts in patients with ARDS.\(^9\) The lipid mediator platelet activating factor (PAF) can activate both neutrophils and platelets and administration can mimic many features of lung injury. Other mechanisms for the generation of barrier dysfunction during the inflammatory phase include pathological changes in the regulation of apoptosis. In this regard soluble Fas ligand (sFasL) has been shown to drive alveolar epithelial cell apoptosis in vitro, and to cause lung injury with increased airway cell apoptosis in vivo, to be released in the airspaces of and be localised to the lung epithelial cells in patients with ARDS.\(^9\) In addition to excess apoptosis in the parenchymal cells, delayed apoptosis in the infiltrating neutrophils may contribute to the proinflammatory load.\(^9\)
Mediators of pulmonary hypertension

Mild pulmonary arterial hypertension is frequently seen in patients with ARDS, and loss of normal control over pulmonary vasomotor tone is an important mechanism underlying refractory hypoxaemia. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction is lost in sepsis induced lung injury as inhalation of 100% oxygen before and during endotoxin challenge does not prevent pulmonary hypertension and hypoxic vasoconstriction is inhibited for several hours after endotoxin challenge. Studies with knockout mice have demonstrated a central role for nitric oxide (NO) in the normal modulation of pulmonary vascular tone. The mechanisms whereby this regulation is lost in lung injury are not clear, but it is known that endotoxin induces COX-2 and inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) expression in the pulmonary vasculature. The situation is complicated, however, as endotoxin contributes to an early marked pulmonary hypertension despite the induction of iNOS and irrespective of the pulmonary artery occlusion pressure or cardiac output. Increased expression of the pulmonary vasoconstrictr endothelin-1 is associated with pulmonary hypertension in sepsis and ARDS. Thromboxane B₂, another pulmonary vasoconstrictr, may also be an important mediator of pulmonary hypertension in ARDS as COX inhibitors reduce the early pulmonary hypertension induced by endotoxin. Other pulmonary vasoconstrictors may also be released in ARDS and other mechanisms of pulmonary hypertension such as microthromboembolism probably contribute. Inflammation leads to a procoagulant state and disseminated intravascular coagulation which is well recognised in ARDS and sepsis. Thrombin can also potentiate inflammation and lead to endothelial barrier dysfunction, in addition to its profibrotic effects (see below).

Surfactant dysfunction

Inflammation leads to surfactant dysfunction in ARDS. Surfactant is secreted mainly by alveolar type II cells and consists of phospholipids (predominantly phosphatidylcholine) and surfactant specific proteins, SP-A, SP-B, SP-C and SP-D. The ability of surfactant to lower surface tension is critically dependent on both the phospholipid and the protein components, especially the hydrophobic proteins SP-B and SP-C. The phospholipids are stored in the lamellar bodies of type II cells and interact with surfactant proteins upon release from the cells, forming large aggregates called tubular myelin. During the normal cycle of breathing these functional large surfactant aggregates become dissipated, reducing to smaller aggregates which do not have the same surface tension lowering properties. Type II cells take up these small aggregates and recycle them into new surfactant. The hydrophilic surfactant protein SP-A, quantitatively the major surfactant protein, plays a key role in this process. The other hydrophilic surfactant protein is SP-D, which may also have a function in phospholipid recycling. SP-A and SP-D are members of the collectin family and form part of the innate immune system in the lung; interestingly, both have significant antibacterial activity and inhibit neutrophil apoptosis. Surfactant levels are dramatically decreased in the infant respiratory distress syndrome due to immaturity of the type II cells. By contrast, in ARDS surfactant deficiency is not a primary causal event; rather, the inflammatory processes lead to surfactant dysfunction as a secondary factor. Damage and loss of type II cells leads to decreased synthesis and recirculation of surfactant. This defect in turnover can lead to accumulation of small aggregates, while overall surfactant performance follows a reduction in the functional large surfactant aggregates and damage to surfactant proteins. In addition, the protein rich oedema in ARDS “contaminates” surfactant, further reducing its functional capacity. Furthermore, in lung injury the ratio of minor phospholipids to phosphatidylcholine increases, possibly indicating damage and release of cell membrane lipids. The degree to which surfactant dysfunction contributes to the pathogenesis of ARDS is currently not clear.

The fibroproliferative response

Fibroproliferation is a stereotypical part of the normal repair process which, if not closely regulated, can have serious consequences. The fibrotic response is fuelled by mediators that stimulate local fibroblasts to migrate, replicate, and produce excessive connective tissue. Animal models have suggested a number of potential profibrotic factors. For example, the expression of TNF-α in the lung, using an SP-C promoter for tissue specificity, led to the development of a T lymphocyte predominant alveolitis which progressed steadily to a histological picture resembling idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis. These data suggest that TNF-α and other proinflammatory mediators, including IL-1β, play important roles in the development of pulmonary fibrosis. Similarly, expression of transforming growth factor α (TGF-α) in the distal pulmonary epithelium induced pulmonary fibrosis, the extent of which is related to the level of gene expression. The Th2 cytokines have been implicated in fibroproliferative disorders and both IL-4 and IL-13 are increased in a bleomycin model of fibrosis; interestingly, inhibition of IL-13 significantly abrogated this fibrotic response. Although many mediators regulate collagen metabolism in pulmonary fibrosis, studies of the role in ARDS are very limited. There is evidence that the levels of TGF-β and a platelet derived growth factor (PDGF)-like factor are increased in BAL fluid from patients with ARDS. A number of products of the coagulation cascade—particularly fibrin, thrombin, and factor Xa—are important mediators of the pulmonary profibrotic response and are increased in patients with ARDS.

The archetypal profibrotic cytokine is TGF-β, of which there are three closely related isoforms (TGF-β1, 2 and 3) that exert nearly identical effects as modulators of inflammation, inhibitors of growth and differentiation, and regulators of extracellular matrix production. Studies in animals and in humans strongly suggest that TGF-β is important in the pathogenesis of pulmonary fibrosis. It has been shown be mitogenic and chemotactic for fibroblasts, to increase the synthesis of extracellular matrix proteins, and to inhibit the production of matrix degrading enzymes. TGF-β1 should not be simply viewed as a profibrotic cytokine, however, as it has multiple other actions—it is anti-inflammatory, decreases epithelial proliferation, and can be pro-apoptotic for many cell types. It is also a powerful chemotactic agent for monocytes and macrophages, essential cells in the process of wound healing. In the normal repair process the secretion of TGF-β1 is thus a powerful effector for resolution and it is only when its expression is persistent or excessive that it leads to pathological fibrosis. TGF-β1 is produced as a latent precursor that is converted into the mature bioactive form after cleavage of the N-terminal portion, termed the latency associated peptide (LAP). In animal models the transfection of active (but not latent) TGF-β1 results in severe fibrosis. More recently it has been shown that the integrin αvβ6, an adhesion molecule that binds matrix and anchors cells, can bind LAP and activate TGF-β1. The expression of this integrin is very low or absent on most normal adult epithelial cells but is upregulated dramatically after injury. Failure to express this adhesion molecule causes almost complete protection against bleomycin induced lung injury and fibrosis in mice. This highlights the role of the alveolar epithelium, integrins, and TGF-β1 in the regulation of the inflammatory and repair processes.

Resolution of ARDS

Liquid is gradually cleared from airspaces by ion pumps that transport sodium with osmotically driven water movement across the alveolar epithelium via membrane water
channels.\(^7\) Catecholamines may increase this while propranolol or amiloride inhibit sodium transport and impede clearance of alveolar fluid. Repair of the injured lung requires an intact epithelial basal lamina which facilitates restoration of the epithelial barrier and may thus further promote clearance of oedema.\(^4\) Lung lymph flow, a much ignored subject, may also contribute to the clearance of pulmonary oedema.

Histologically, the resolution phase of ARDS has been the least clearly documented. Apoptosis is essential to the clearance of neutrophils and has been clearly demonstrated in the lung in patients with ARDS.\(^5\) Apoptosis is also responsible for removing surplus alveolar type II cells while survivors differentiate into a type I phenotype. BAL fluid recovered from patients with ALI during the repair phase can induce fibroblast and endothelial cell death. This provides a mechanism to clear excess cells while retaining underlying normal lung structure. Resolution of ARDS requires more than the clearance of leukocytes; for successful healing the fibroproliferative response must be terminated and excess mesenchymal cells cleared. As the inflammatory and fibroproliferative processes are intimately linked and many mediators such as thrombin and IL-1 are central to both, it is likely that the resolution of inflammation makes a major contribution to the resolution of fibroproliferation.\(^6\) Other mediators will be produced that promote resolution—for example, interferon (IFN)\(\gamma\) produced by activated T cells downregulates the transcription of the TGF-\(\beta\) gene. The generation of pulmonary fibrosis involves a complex interplay between collagen deposition and degradation, with the early balance shifted dramatically towards deposition. In ARDS type III collagen is initially deposited which is more flexible and susceptible to breakdown; later this is remodelled to the thicker and more resistant type I collagen.\(^7\) The mechanisms involved in the clearance of the fibrotic matrix are not well established but are likely to involve matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) and gelatinases that digest collagen. At least two of these—MMP-2 and MMP-9—are increased in the lungs of patients with ARDS.\(^8\) The MMPs are further regulated by tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases (TIMPs), although the relative balance of these systems during ARDS is unknown.

The pulmonary fibrosis in ARDS does not necessarily completely resolve and can lead to persisting pulmonary problems both during weaning and after patients leave the intensive care unit. Recovery of lung function can be slow, with some patients taking up to 12 months to return to baseline while others have persisting abnormalities. In the majority, however, lung mechanics fully recover suggesting that the pulmonary fibrosis in ARDS is reversible.\(^9\)

### PATHOPHYSIOLOGY RELATED TO PATHOLOGY

Refractory hypoxaemia may be multifactorial, but intrapulmonary shunting with ventilation-perfusion mismatching is believed to be the primary cause. Studies on patients with ARDS have shown that the degree of intrapulmonary shunting is sufficient to account for the entire alveolar-arterial oxygen gradient, suggesting that a decrease in transfer factor may be of secondary importance.\(^1\) Microscopic studies have shown that the alveolar spaces are filled with oedema, debris, hyaline membranes, and matrix or lost through alveolar collapse, creating a huge physiological deadspace. The effects of this on gas exchange are maximised by loss of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction and by the widespread patchy vascular defects so common in ARDS. Pulmonary oedema will also lead to a significant diffusion block. The causes of pulmonary oedema are multiple and include mediator induced vascular permeability, increased pulmonary pressures, and alterations to the oncostatic pressure as suggested in the seminal studies by Guyton in 1959.\(^9\)

- There is much greater overlap of the inflammatory and fibroproliferative phases of ARDS than previously imagined, with the fibroproliferative response beginning within 24 hours and its severity being directly related to the outcome.
- An exaggerated inflammatory response underlies the pathogenesis of ARDS. The neutrophil is the dominant leukocyte, while many proinflammatory agents including endotoxin, proinflammatory and chemotactic cytokines, vascular endothelial growth factor, high mobility group-1 protein and thrombin, together with oxidant stress, are all implicated in vascular leakage and lung damage.
- Surfactant deficiency is not a primary causal event in ARDS; rather, the inflammatory processes lead to surfactant dysfunction as a secondary factor.
- Alveolar type II cell proliferation and enhanced fibroproliferation are key steps in attempts at repair in the lung; both offer potential targets for future therapies.

Lung compliance is markedly decreased in ARDS. This will be related initially to flooding of the alveoli and the interstitial spaces with fluid inflammatory cells and debris. Progressively, this inflammatory response is organised and replaced by matrix that further reduces compliance. The effects of this on the pressure-volume curve and on mechanical ventilation will be reviewed in greater detail in chapter 9.

### CONCLUSIONS

Understanding the pathogenesis of ARDS is essential both to choosing effective management strategies and to looking for novel treatments. We have seen that mechanical ventilation can induce inflammation if applied inappropriately or reduce mortality if correctly used, and that this has a clear pathophysiological rationale. Similar concepts have led to ongoing studies of prone ventilation and to the investigation of other ventilatory strategies such as high frequency ventilation and lung rest with extracorporeal membrane oxygenation.

This chapter has outlined the key mediators involved in both the inflammatory and fibroproliferative responses and highlighted some of the important mechanisms through which these responses are regulated. Many of these mediators will be examined in more detail in other chapters in this book that deal with treatment options.

Funded by the Medical Research Council (MRC) UK.

### REFERENCES

The pathogenesis of ALI/ARDS

Weiland JE

McHugh LG

Snyder LS

Matsubara O

Zapol WM

Bellingan GJ

Kapanci Y

Docke WD

Bone RC

textbook of critical care


Bennett D Bion JF,


1994;

Am Rev Respir Dis

pulmonary barotrauma in critically ill patients with acute respiratory

infection in adult respiratory distress syndrome.

Am J Physiol

2001:293–9.

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

et al

2000:

102.8

2001:163


8.

22

23

37

12

13

19

40

38

69

151

1983;

42

54

1985;i:1239–42.


42

43

58

116.

1999;i:1239–42.

46

47

132

8

2001:133:1043–8

2001:163:305

2000:8:864–75.


1979;


1999:17453–0.


1985;i:1239–42.


77 Green KE, Gando S, Henson PM. SPA and SP-D inhibit spontaneous neutrophil apoptosis via activation of the PI-3 kinase/AKT. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2001;163:23.


80 Keane MP, Belperio JA, Burdick MD, et al. IL-13 is an important cytokine in the pathogenesis of pulmonary fibrosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2001;163:43.


91 Guyton AC. Respiratory Management in Critical Care.
Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) is a viral illness characterised by a syndrome of fever and respiratory symptoms that can progress to respiratory failure and death. Initial reports of a highly contagious atypical pneumonia originated from the Guangdong province of the People’s Republic of China in November 2002. The condition remained isolated to China until February 2003 when an infected physician travelled to Hong Kong. Since that time the disease has spread, with 8437 probable cases in 32 countries and 813 deaths providing a case fatality rate of 9.6% (WHO website http://www.who.int/csr/sars/en/). The largest outbreaks have been in China, Toronto (Canada), and Singapore. This review describes the current state of knowledge of SARS, with particular reference to the management of the critically ill patient and the safety and protection of the staff in intensive care units (ICU). The recommendations are based on the published data available at the time of writing, collaborations between physicians in many affected centres, recommendations from the WHO and Centres for Disease Control (CDC), and local experience. Given the novelty of this illness, it is inevitable that treatments will evolve. The reader should therefore refer to more current sources to guide patient management.

AETIOLOGICAL AGENT

The worldwide cooperative effort to identify the aetiological agent for SARS has been summarised elsewhere. The speed at which the aetiological agent was identified is a testimony to the progress in advances in molecular biology, the automation of molecular methods, and the power of genomic information available in databases accessible on the Internet. Initial efforts focused on several potential viruses—most notably, metapneumoviruses and paramyxovirus. On 21 March 2003 an agent isolated from patients meeting the case definition for SARS was found to be capable of producing cytopathic changes in a Vero and a murine cell line from a laboratory in Germany, and in rhesus monkey renal cell lines in a laboratory in Hong Kong. Using electron microscopy, coronavirus-like particles were identified (fig 7.1). Subsequent sequencing using reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) of the isolated product identified the virus as a novel coronavirus. Further study of this agent and sequencing its 29 751 base genomic structure supported the notion that this virus is not merely a mutation of an existing strain, but that it represents a novel infectious agent.

The SARS coronavirus (SARS-CoV) is an RNA virus belonging to the family Coronaviridae. The genome sequence revealed that SARS-CoV was not significantly related to other coronaviruses, including two human coronaviruses (HCoV-OC43 and HCoV-229E). Marra and coworkers reported that the virus did not closely resemble any of the three previously known groups of coronaviruses. Coronaviridae are capable of producing both enteric and respiratory disease in a variety of hosts. Indeed, their cellular tropism has been exploited to develop models of gastroenteritis and hepatitis (G Levy, personal communication). A glycoprotein projection on the surface of the virus (S protein; in effect, a cellular anchor) is thought to provide the virus with its cellular and host preferences. Interestingly (and of some concern), two distinct genotypes of the SARS-CoV have been described. The different genotypes were partitioned between two epidemiologically distinct epidemics. Disturbingly, they also reported that there was a common variant with an amino acid substitution in the sequence coding for the S protein of the SARS coronavirus. They suggested that this substitution may have resulted from immunological pressure mounted by the host. Given the purported role of the S protein, changes in its structure have the potential both to affect the cellular tropism and, in turn, the clinical features of the illness, and further to complicate future vaccine development. Until changes in the structure of the virus divert its attention to other mammalian hosts, SARS is likely to remain a global health concern to humans.

CLINICAL FEATURES

In the absence of a rapid early diagnostic assay, case definitions of SARS are based on the presence of epidemiological risk factors (close contact with SARS cases or travel to SARS “affected” areas) with a combination of fever and respiratory symptoms, with or without hypoxia and chest radiographic changes. However, as the SARS epidemic spread, the ability to distinguish it from other community acquired pneumonias based on such epidemiological clues became increasingly tenuous. Although more recent definitions have incorporated serological assays or identification of viral RNA to confirm cases (see below), at this time SARS must be considered in the differential diagnosis of any community acquired or nosocomial pneumonia. The sensitivity of the WHO definition of a SARS case has been shown to be limited when applied as a screening method for individuals at risk of infection. Using clinical criteria and progression of the disease in the face of conventional therapy as a gold standard, the current WHO definition of SARS had a specificity of 96% and negative predictive value of 86%. These findings were attributed to the absence of respiratory symptoms in many cases at presentation and because radiographic features were not used in the WHO definition of a case. However, their results are not surprising as the WHO definition was not intended as a screening...
tool. Screening methods should incorporate questions surrounding potential exposure, travel history, and an evaluation of the presence of fever, both respiratory and non-respiratory complaints such as malaise, headache, fatigue, and abdominal symptoms. The importance of proper screening, a rational and aggressive local health policy, sweeping quarantines, and infection control measures in the management of the epidemic cannot be overemphasised. It is through these efforts that affected regions have been able to contain the spread of this disease. In the absence of specific treatment for SARS, such measures are (and will remain) the cornerstone of global therapy. The current case definitions can be found at the websites for the Centre for Disease Control (http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/sars/) and WHO (http://www.who.int/csr/sars/en/).

**DIAGNOSTIC TESTING**

At present, specific testing for SARS-CoV infection has limitations that prohibit definitive early confirmation of disease. Diagnostic tests for the SARS virus include (a) detection of antibodies produced in response to SARS infection; (b) molecular tests—for example, PCR to detect genetic material of the SARS-CoV in blood, stool or respiratory secretions; and (c) cell culture techniques which allow the identification of live virus. Immunofluorescence assays become positive later in the illness, but may be useful to confirm undifferentiated cases or to assist with epidemiological studies. IgG seroconversion occurs in most patients by day 20. Positive antibody test results, seroconversion, or a fourfold rise in titre indicate previous infection with the SARS virus. A negative antibody test result more than 21 days after the onset of illness is likely to exclude infection with SARS-CoV. At the time of writing, antibody testing is unsuitable during the acute illness. Clearly there is a need to develop an assay that will allow the earlier detection of infected individuals to facilitate infection control. PCR based assays have been developed by different groups around the world and, although such assays are available commercially, results of these tests should still not be used to exclude the diagnosis of SARS. Studies evaluating viral loads in respiratory secretions using quantitative PCR describe an “inverted V” pattern with peak viral load occurring near day 10 (fig 7.2). The presence of the infectious virus can be confirmed by inoculating suitable cell cultures (such as Vero cells) with respiratory secretions, blood or stool, and propagating the virus in vitro. Once isolated, the virus must be identified as SARS-CoV using further tests performed under biosafety precautions that are not routinely available.

![Figure 7.1](image1)

**Figure 7.1** Electron micrographs of the SARS coronavirus. (A) Thin section electron micrograph of viral nucleocapsids aligned along the membrane of the rough endoplasmic reticulum (arrow) as particles bud into the cisternae. (B) A methylamine tungstate penetrated coronavirus particle with an internal helical nucleocapsid-like structure and club shaped surface projections surrounding the periphery of the particle. Reproduced with permission from Ksiazek et al.

![Figure 7.2](image2)

**Figure 7.2** Sequential quantitative reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) for SARS coronavirus in the nasopharyngeal secretions of 14 patients reported by Peiris and coworkers. A peak in the viral loads was seen on the 10th day of sampling. Reproduced with permission from Ksiazek et al.
white cell count at presentation may carry a poor prognosis. Anaemia has been reported in up to 60% of patients and may be secondary to ribavirin mediated haemolysis. Haemolysis may also contribute to the hyperbilirubinaemia and high LDH levels seen in some patients.

**NATURAL HISTORY**

The reported incubation period of SARS varies from 2 to 7 days (http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr). However, based on the infectious characteristics of other members of the Coronaviridae, there is concern that the incubation period may be up to 21 days. Indeed, in a recent case in Toronto a medical student developed symptoms beyond the 10 day quarantine period. The mean duration of symptoms to time of admission to hospital is 3–5 days and in one study was observed to shorten throughout the epidemic. The viral load may play a role in both the transmission and severity of subsequent disease. The notion of “super spreaders” has been suggested to describe the occasional patient who is associated with spread to large numbers of contacts. At present it is unknown if asymptomatic individuals are capable of spreading the disease. The mode of transmission is thought to be droplet spread. Consequently, protective measures have focused on barrier methods, the intensity of which varies with the risk of aerosolisation of secretions.

To date, several studies have provided valuable information regarding the natural progression of the disease. The Hong Kong group has provided an excellent summary of their prospective evaluation of the temporal progression of the disease in a cohort of individuals who were infected following exposure to sewage in a local housing complex, Amoy Gardens. A three phase illness was described.

The first stage was characterised by influenza-like symptoms such as fever, myalgia and headache. Our current understanding is that fever eventually occurs in all patients and is the presenting symptom. However, we also recognise that fever may occasionally be absent on presentation in the elderly. Patients often have mild respiratory symptoms at the onset, and gastrointestinal manifestations are relatively uncommon initial features. Patients may deffervesce at the end of this phase. Peiris et al. correlated this first phase with an increase in viral load and ascribed the symptoms to direct viral infection and cytolysis. The chest radiograph is abnormal at presentation in up to 70% of patients, featuring patchy or focal airspace disease with a predilection for the periphery and bases of the lungs (fig 7.3). Half of the opacities are initially unilateral. In addition to a progression of the focal opacities during the course of the illness, the opacities are also often migratory (fig 7.3). Spontaneous pneumomediastinum has been reported in some patients. The studies that have included CT evaluation reveal a pattern that shares remarkable similarities with cryptogenic organising pneumonia or bronchiolitis obliterans organising pneumonia (COP/BOOP). CT changes may be present in the absence of detectable abnormalities on chest radiographs (fig 7.4). Ground glass opacification and the peripheral distribution of the opacities on the CT scan are characteristic. Pleural effusions are notably absent.

Recurrence of fever occurs in up to 85% of patients after 5–7 days and heralds the onset of the second phase. During this phase respiratory symptoms are often intensified with worsening breathlessness and dry cough. In one cohort 73% of patients developed diarrhoea a week into their illness. Diarrhoea may pose special risks for healthcare providers as the virus can probably spread by the faecal-oral route. The observed decrease in viral load during this phase supports the notion that this phase may be related to the immunological response by the host. In some cases these symptoms are followed by hypoxaemia and progression in the severity and distribution of the pulmonary infiltrates.

**Figure 7.3** Progression in appearances on the chest radiograph of a patient with SARS. (A) Radiograph taken on presentation to the emergency department with fever and cough. Ill defined airspace filling disease is seen in the left base (arrow). (B) 48 hours after admission the patient developed progressive hypoxaemia and worsening of the chest radiograph with involvement of both lungs. (C) 72 hours after admission the patient was mechanically ventilated via an endotracheal tube. This chest radiograph taken 96 hours after admission demonstrates bilateral patchy airspace disease consistent with the acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). Evidence of extrapulmonary air is also seen (arrow).
Respiratory failure

About 20–25% of patients with SARS become critically ill and require ICU admission. The mean duration from the onset of illness to ICU admission is 5–10 days and respiratory failure is the usual indication. A recent report from the Singapore group found that 45 of 199 infected patients eventually fulfilled the criteria for the diagnosis of acute lung injury (PaO₂/FiO₂ <300) or ARDS (PaO₂/FiO₂ <200). In 10–15% of patients lung injury may progress to the point where mechanical ventilatory support is required. Advanced age, male sex, chronic hepatitis B carriage, raised creatinine levels, and recurrence of fever were associated with the development of ARDS in one study. However, after multivariate analysis, only advanced age and chronic hepatitis C infection correlated with the development of ARDS, although the importance of coexisting hepatitis C infection will probably be less relevant in areas where hepatitis C is less prevalent. Classic histological features of ARDS, including hyaline membranes, have been observed in post mortem samples from patients with SARS (fig 7.5). Loss of cilia, bronchial wall denudation, and squamous bronchial metaplasia have also been described. The presence of giant cells and macrophages in the alveolar space early in the disease has been claimed to be a diagnostic pathological characteristic of SARS related ARDS. However, in our view the specificity of these findings for SARS infection is not clear; for example, both multinucleated type II pneumocytes and macrophages are seen in other forms of ARDS. The histological appearances change with the duration of the illness, with cases of less than 10 days’ duration having acute phase diffuse alveolar damage, airspace oedema, and bronchiolar fibrin deposition. Specimens from patients after 10 days of respiratory failure had features of the organising phase of diffuse alveolar damage, type II pneumocyte hyperplasia, squamous metaplasia, multinucleated giant cells, and acute bronchopneumonia. It is unclear how the differences in pathological appearance relate to prognosis.

Following a period of clinical improvement, some patients experience new chest infiltrates or sudden progression of respiratory failure. This third phase appears to be associated with the development of IgG seroconversion, although nosocomial superinfection may account for this deterioration in some of the patients. Haemophagocytosis in the lung biopsy specimens from these patients lends support to the hypothesis that SARS may cause cytokine dysregulation and indirect organ injury through host mediated mechanisms.

**TREATMENT**

If the diagnosis is uncertain, empirical treatment for community acquired pneumonia should be started. In most series of SARS treatment has included broad spectrum antibiotics including a fluoroquinolone or macrolide. The antiviral agent ribavirin has been used in the majority of patients treated in Hong Kong and in the first SARS outbreak in Toronto, without evidence of efficacy or even a strong anecdotal suggestion that patients benefit. The adverse effects of ribavirin are significant, particularly haemolytic anaemia and electrolyte disturbances such as hypokalaemia and hypomagnesaemia. The drug is also teratogenic. These features have led to the use of ribavirin falling out of favour. Similarly, the use of antiretroviral agents remains speculative. In a presentation at the international WHO SARS conference, the use of Lopinavir (an inhibitor of the HIV protease) in 34 patients with SARS was reported. Early in the
disease there was a significantly lower rate of mortality (0 v 10.4%, p=0.04) and mechanical ventilation (0 v 12.2%, p=0.03) in the group treated with Lopinavir compared with historical controls (n=690; http://www.who.int/csr/sars/conference/june_2003/). Lopinavir may also have had benefit as rescue therapy when used with pulsed corticosteroids.

Anecdotal evidence suggests that corticosteroids show some benefit, particularly in patients with progressive pulmonary infiltrates and hypoxaemia. Various methylprednisolone regimens have been used at different centres with doses ranging from 40 mg twice daily (similar to treatment of Pneumocystis pneumonia) to 2 mg/kg/day (similar to treatment of late phase ARDS), to pulsed doses of 500 mg IV daily. Physicians must search for other causes for fever and infection as secondary nosocomial infections may be responsible for the clinical progression seen in some critically ill patients later in their illness. Indeed, early reports in coronaviral models of hepatitis suggest that the use of corticosteroids may worsen outcome. The use and correct timing of steroids in patients with SARS may be important and needs to be prospectively evaluated.

More recently the use of interferon beta has been advocated. The rationale for its use stems from the concern that the later phases of the illness are driven by the host’s immune response. Anecdotal reports on the use of interferon appear promising and a clinical study is currently underway. Plasmapheresis as rescue therapy has also been used in some centres with uncertain benefit (http://www.who.int/csr/sars/conference/june_2003/).

### SURVIVAL

The case fatality rate varies from 3% to 12%, depending on whether the denominator includes suspected and probable cases (3%) or probable cases alone (12%).

Older patients or those with pre-existing disease (diabetes, cardiac disease) have a higher mortality rate. In one study the mortality rate of patients over 60 years was 43% compared with 13.2% in their younger counterparts. While the mortality rate is higher in older patients, particularly those with pre-existing co-morbidity, young previously healthy people succumb to SARS, possibly because of higher viral loads or their vigorous host response. In multivariate analysis age, LDH level, and an increased neutrophil count at presentation were associated with a higher odds ratio for a poor outcome (death or ICU admission). Children appear to have a much less severe course than adults. For patients admitted to the ICU, the mortality rates at 28 days have been reported to be 34–37%. In the series reported by Fowler and coworkers, the ICU mortality rate of patients over 60 years was 43% compared with 13.2% in their younger counterparts.

### MANAGEMENT OF RESPIRATORY FAILURE

The risk of droplet spread is increased by various procedures (table 7.1). Efforts to avoid viral spread include the avoidance of nebulisers for drug administration and limitation or avoidance of the use of non-invasive ventilation. Nebulised humidification for oxygen therapy may carry similar risks, and our practice is to provide non-humidified oxygen using nasal prongs or a Venturi mask. A non-rebreather mask with expiratory port allowing for gas filtration is available and may be of value. During bag-mask-valve ventilation a filter should be used on the expiratory port.

Tracheal intubation poses a special risk to healthcare providers. Indeed, several of the outbreaks among healthcare workers in Toronto occurred following intubation of patients with SARS. As a result, strict guidelines for intubation and the management of cardiac arrest have been developed. Recommendations for general anaesthesia have also been published. In all instances, when a patient with known or suspected SARS requires tracheal intubation, perfect execution of infection control measures and donning of protective equipment is required. In Toronto mock cardiac arrests and patient simulators with relevant clinical scenarios have been used. Intubation should be performed by the most skilled person available using the method with which they are most comfortable. Awake intubation may be associated with agitation and coughing which can severely compromise infection control precautions. We therefore recommend rapid sequence induction to facilitate airway stabilisation. A powered air purification respirator (PAPR) such as 3M Airmate can be used for these procedures.

Designated mechanical ventilators should have two filters (for example, Conserve 50 PALL filters) placed to eliminate the
exhalation of viral particles into the environment and to protect the inside of the ventilator from contamination. One filter should be interposed between the distal end of the expiratory tubing and the ventilator itself, and the second should be placed on the exhalation outlet of the ventilator. Ideally, the exhalation port should then be connected to a central scavenging system that would eliminate release of viral particles into the ICU. High frequency oscillation may be associated with increased risk of droplet spread and exposure to respiratory secretions, and our practice is to avoid this intervention in patients with SARS. High frequency jet ventilation for those failing conventional ventilation may be used safely (owing to the ability to place in-line filters).

If a ventilated patient desaturates requiring manual bag-valve-mask ventilation, it is important to turn the ventilator to standby before disconnection to avoid droplet spray. In fact, in an intubated patient with SARS we recommend avoiding this intervention unless there is an obvious mechanical ventilator failure, even in the event of a cardiac arrest. Similarly, tracheobronchial suctioning of patients should be minimised and an in-line suction catheter system should be used. Because of the effect of infection control measures on bedside care, the use of kinetic beds may be considered for patients who are unable to move without assistance.

The severity of ARDS complicating SARS has been singularly impressive. Aside from the advanced infection control measures, the ventilatory management of these patients is no different from others with ARDS. We therefore use a low tidal volume strategy to minimise the risk of ventilator associated lung injury and adopt an open lung approach using recruitment manoeuvres and higher levels of PEEP to maintain alveolar patency. The use of routine recruitment manoeuvres is offset by the desire to minimise exposure to respiratory therapists and nurses. Little experience exists with the use of interventions such as prone positioning or inhaled nitric oxide in patients with SARS. In the report by Lew et al., three of seven patients had a significant improvement in oxygenation with prone positioning. Anecdotally, the experience in Toronto and Singapore has been that nitric oxide offers little benefit.

The development of air leaks appears to be high in patients with SARS related ARDS, ranging between 20% and 34%. Eleven episodes of venous thromboembolism and seven episodes of proven or suspected pulmonary embolism were reported by Lew and colleagues, although the mode of prophylaxis was not stated.

INFECTION CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

Initial unfamiliarity and, later in the SARS outbreak, the failure to adhere to infection control procedures resulted in the spread of SARS to many healthcare personnel. The organism appears to be transmitted by droplet spread, although surface contamination and possibly airborne spread may play a role. Recent data suggest that the virus may remain viable for considerable periods (up to 24 hours) on a dry surface. As a result, staff education and continued vigilance are essential. Infection of healthcare workers involved in high risk procedures is a very real threat. Despite the use of infection control precautions, nine healthcare workers developed SARS following a prolonged intubation procedure, eight of whom required hospitalisation. Droplet aerosolisation also occurs during bronchoscopy and similar precautions should be employed, including sedation and paralysis to prevent coughing.

Some recommendations for ICU staff have been published and are shown in box 7.1. To avoid repeatedly breaking the negative pressure barrier, individual rooms should be stocked with basic supplies and modified cardiac arrest carts containing emergency drugs should be available in the room. Staff should remain outside the negative pressure rooms as much as possible. This means timing venesection and administration of treatment to minimise entries and the use of video camera equipment or windows to monitor patients without exposing staff. An antechamber (preferably with a sink) helps to maintain strict infection control precautions. Pens, paper, and other personal items should not be allowed into or removed from the room. Airborne precautions using a N-95 mask or equivalent should be taken; it is important that manufacturers’ specifications are adhered to—for example, some N-95 masks maintain protection for 8 hours and some only for 4 hours. Touching the mask or lifting it to wipe the face or nose should be avoided. It is crucial to maintain a close seal to the skin and to ensure a proper fit. Sessions to determine optimum fit and mask type should be provided to all personnel. In addition, contact precautions—including the use of double gowns (at least one of which is waterproof) and double gloves, hats and shoe covers—should be used. Gowns, gloves, hats, boots, masks, and goggles should be changed after seeing each patient. Eye protection with non-reusable goggles or face shield is required and staff should change into hospital gowns.

Environment/equipment

- Negative pressure isolation rooms with antechambers, and doors closed at all times.
- Individual isolation rooms stocked with basic supplies and emergency drugs.
- Alcohol based hand and equipment disinfectants.
- Gloves, gowns, masks and disposal units readily available.
- Use of video camera equipment or windows to monitor patients.
- Careful and frequent cleaning of surfaces with disposable clothes and alcohol based detergents.
- No equipment should be shared.

Transport

- Avoid patient transport where possible.
- Reflect on need for investigations and whether the benefits justify the transportation risks.
- Intubated patients should have a filter (Conserve PALL 50) inserted between the bag-valve and the swivel connector.
- Infection control should be alerted.

Box 7.1 Infection control precautions in the ICU

Staff education

- High risk procedures, alternatives and precautions.
- Ways of minimising exposure and effective use of time when in the room.
- Instructions to staff on how to “undress” and “re-dress” without contamination.
- Importance of vigilance and adherence to all infection control precautions.
- Importance of monitoring own health.
- Information on SARS as it evolves.

Dress precautions

- Airborne precautions using an N-95 mask or equivalent.
- Contact precautions.
- Eye protection with a non-reusable goggles or face shield.
- Pens, paper, other personal items should not be allowed into or removed from the room.
- Powered air purification respirator (PAPR) hoods should be used during high risk procedures.

Environment/equipment

- Negative pressure isolation rooms with antechambers, and doors closed at all times.
- Individual isolation rooms stocked with basic supplies and emergency drugs.
- Alcohol based hand and equipment disinfectants.
- Gloves, gowns, masks and disposal units readily available.
- Use of video camera equipment or windows to monitor patients.
- Careful and frequent cleaning of surfaces with disposable clothes and alcohol based detergents.
- No equipment should be shared.

Transport

- Avoid patient transport where possible.
- Reflect on need for investigations and whether the benefits justify the transportation risks.
- Intubated patients should have a filter (Conserve PALL 50) inserted between the bag-valve and the swivel connector.
- Infection control should be alerted.
patients should never be transported while being supported by bag-valve-mask ventilation and should preferably be intubated. If bag ventilation is used, a filter should be placed between the bag and the endotracheal tube. The infection control department should be consulted for advice on proper precautions.

An important component of infection control is the prioritisation of personnel and visitors having contact with the patient. It is crucial that staff do not work if they are ill, even if the diagnosis is not clear. After unprotected contact with a SARS patient, staff are subject to a compulsory 10-day quarantine period. Patients were restricted in Toronto hospitals during the outbreak. Indeed, several of the restrictions remained in place and will continue to do so for an indefinite period. All visitors are screened for symptoms of SARS and adhere to the same precautions as hospital staff. Visits with SARS patients are prohibited even on compassionate grounds.

**CONCLUSIONS**

SARS has resulted in significant challenges for critical care medicine. The ability of this disease to incapacitate staff has resulted in staff safety becoming a priority to maintain adequate critical care services. Indeed, the impact of this infection on the healthcare system and regional economy cannot be understated. Resources of individual hospitals were rapidly outstripped as scores of administrative and front line care providers were quarantined or became ill. In Toronto 18% of the critically ill patients were healthcare workers. The ability of this infection to spread is singularly impressive and devastating. Our understanding of the virus, its diagnosis, and treatment continues to evolve. Infection control measures remain the mainstay of regional and global health. The concept of “universal precautions” has expanded beyond policies regarding blood borne infections and now includes strict respiratory and contact precautions. The effect of these stringent policies on patients without SARS was devastating. As a result of the outbreak, hospitals were closed and advanced surgical and medical care programmes such as transplantation and organ donation were shut down. In one instance 35 critical care beds were closed (representing 38% of our tertiary ICU beds) because of an inadverted exposure of ICU staff to a patient with SARS. The secondary morbidity and mortality from this disease on patients who were placed on hold or whose surgery was delayed remains to be determined. The guidelines and recommendations discussed here will change as our knowledge grows. No doubt information technology played an important role in allowing collaboration and rapid transfer of information throughout the SARS pandemic. Indeed, through such collaboration we can hope to improve the mortality and morbidity of our patients and, indeed, ourselves.

**References**


Mechanical ventilation has become an indispensable tool, facilitating general anaesthesia and supporting life in the critically ill. However, its application has adverse effects including an increased risk of pneumonia, impaired cardiac performance, and neuromuscular problems relating to sedation and muscle relaxants. Moreover, it has become clear that applying pressure—whether positive or negative—to the lung can cause damage known as ventilator induced lung injury (VILI). This concept is not new. In his treatise on resuscitation of the apparently dead, John Fothergill in 1745 suggested that mouth to mouth inflation of the victim's lungs might be preferable to using a pair of bellows as “the lungs of one man may bear, without injury, as great a force as another man can exert; which by the bellows cannot always be determin’d”. Although not specifically addressed, Fothergill’s admonition against the use of the bellows probably related to gross air leaks produced by large pressures. This type of injury is now called barotrauma and was the first widely recognised manifestation of VILI. The clinical and radiological manifestations of barotrauma include pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, and surgical emphysema.

Later, evidence accumulated to suggest that ventilation causes more subtle morphological and functional changes and can excite an inflammatory response within the lung. This type of injury was not recognised for many years as the pattern of damage is often indistinguishable from that seen in other forms of lung injury such as the acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), for which mechanical ventilation is an indispensable treatment. Studies using animal models were necessary to define key aspects of VILI. Based on these, many clinicians in the 1990s began to adopt ventilatory strategies designed to minimise lung injury, although the clinical importance of VILI has only recently been established.²

In this chapter we summarise the main risk factors for VILI, its possible mechanisms, and its clinical relevance. Specific ventilation techniques for ARDS are addressed in chapter 9, and will only be alluded to here for the purpose of illustrating general principles.

**MAJOR DETERMINANTS OF VILI**

Most research into VILI is based on positive pressure ventilation delivered via an endotracheal tube, although the principles are equally relevant to non-invasive or negative pressure ventilation. It has become clear that the degree of VILI is determined by the interaction of the ventilator settings and patient related factors, particularly the condition of the ventilated lung.

**Ventilator determinants of VILI**

**Airway pressure and lung distension**

Conceptually, it seems obvious that inflation of the lung will cause damage if airway pressures are high enough. The important issues for the clinician have been (1) what levels of airway pressure are dangerous and (2) can they be avoided in the mechanical ventilation of patients with stiff lungs, as in ARDS?

The association between high airway pressure and air leaks has long been recognised.³ ⁴ However, this relationship does not necessarily imply causality as damaged, stiff lungs that require high airway pressures for ventilation may be intrinsically more prone to air leaks. Recent large studies in patients with ARDS have, in fact, shown a poor correlation between airway pressure (or tidal volume) and the occurrence of air leaks, which occurred in 8–14% of the patients.² ⁵ ⁶ ⁷ However, these data should not be interpreted as demonstrating that the degree of lung distension is unimportant in the development of barotrauma. In these studies airway pressures and tidal volumes were lower than those used in the past when barotrauma rates as high as 39% were reported in patients ventilated for acute respiratory failure.⁸

More subtle lung damage was first unequivocally shown by Webb and Tierney who ventilated rats for 1 hour using different airway pressures with and without positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP).¹ Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident.

Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident. More subtle lung damage was first unequivocally shown by Webb and Tierney who ventilated rats for 1 hour using different airway pressures with and without positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP).¹ Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident.

More subtle lung damage was first unequivocally shown by Webb and Tierney who ventilated rats for 1 hour using different airway pressures with and without positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP).¹ Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident. More subtle lung damage was first unequivocally shown by Webb and Tierney who ventilated rats for 1 hour using different airway pressures with and without positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP).¹ Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident.

Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident. More subtle lung damage was first unequivocally shown by Webb and Tierney who ventilated rats for 1 hour using different airway pressures with and without positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP).¹ Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident. More subtle lung damage was first unequivocally shown by Webb and Tierney who ventilated rats for 1 hour using different airway pressures with and without positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP).¹ Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident. More subtle lung damage was first unequivocally shown by Webb and Tierney who ventilated rats for 1 hour using different airway pressures with and without positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP).¹ Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident. More subtle lung damage was first unequivocally shown by Webb and Tierney who ventilated rats for 1 hour using different airway pressures with and without positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP).¹ Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident. More subtle lung damage was first unequivocally shown by Webb and Tierney who ventilated rats for 1 hour using different airway pressures with and without positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP).¹ Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident. More subtle lung damage was first unequivocally shown by Webb and Tierney who ventilated rats for 1 hour using different airway pressures with and without positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP).¹ Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident. More subtle lung damage was first unequivocally shown by Webb and Tierney who ventilated rats for 1 hour using different airway pressures with and without positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP).¹ Animals ventilated with a peak airway pressure of 14 cm H₂O had no histological changes to be evident.
negative pressure in an iron lung, developed severe injury. These results have been confirmed in other species.\textsuperscript{14-16}

The term volutrauma is therefore more accurate than barotrauma, although in practice the two are closely related. The degree of alveolar distension is determined by the pressure gradient across the alveoli, approximated by the transpulmonary pressure, the difference between the static airway pressure (estimated clinically by the plateau airway pressure) and the pleural pressure. Peak airway pressure is not necessarily a reflection of alveolar pressure and is greatly influenced by the resistance to flow in the airways. Recent guidelines have therefore emphasised the importance of limiting plateau pressures and of being aware of factors that increase (or decrease) the degree of alveolar distension for a given alveolar pressure.\textsuperscript{15}

For example, conditions associated with increased chest wall compliance such as immaturity increase lung distension, and hence damage, for a given alveolar pressure. Conversely, chest wall compliance is commonly reduced by abdominal distension,\textsuperscript{16} which can result in lower alveolar inflation, derecruitment, and hypoxemia if the plateau pressure is inappropriately low.

Lung injury at low lung volumes

There is evidence that lung damage may also be caused by ventilation at low lung volume (meaning low absolute lung volume rather than low tidal volume). This has been well defined in animal models, but the relevance to humans is not firmly established. Several studies have shown that the injurious effects of mechanical ventilation can be attenuated by the application of PEEP.\textsuperscript{16} Ventilation with high tidal volume and low or zero PEEP appears to be more damaging than low tidal volume and high PEEP, even though both strategies result in similar high levels of end inspiratory pressure and alveolar distension. Ventilation of isolated lavaged rat lungs with small tidal volumes (5-6 ml/kg) and low or zero PEEP caused lung injury that could be reduced by the application of higher levels of PEEP.\textsuperscript{20}

A number of mechanisms may explain lung injury associated with ventilation at low absolute lung volumes. Cyclic opening and closing (recruitment-derecruitment) of small airways/lung units may lead to increased local shear stress—so called atelectrauma. PEEP effectively splints open the distal airways, maintaining recruitment throughout the ventilatory cycle. The static pressure-volume curve (fig 8.1) is often used to illustrate the balance between overdistension and recruitment. As airway pressure is increased from functional residual capacity (FRC), an abrupt change in the lung compliance is often evident, particularly in injured or surfactant deficient lungs. This lower inflection point (LIP) may represent the approximate pressure (volume) at which lung units are recruited. The upper inflection point (UIP) at which lung compliance decreases at higher airway pressure was thought to reflect the point at which alveoli are becoming overdistended, and therefore potentially damaged.\textsuperscript{21}

Based on these concepts, an ideal ventilatory strategy would be one in which all the tidal ventilation would take place on the "steep" portion of the pressure-volume curve where the lung is most compliant. The value of PEEP would be sufficient to prevent derecruitment but not so great as to lead to overdistension. High frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV) potentially offers the ideal combination of minimum tidal volume while maintaining maximal recruitment (the "open lung"), provided sufficient end expiratory lung volume is maintained.\textsuperscript{24,25}

Although theoretically sound, the explanation of VILI according to the pressure-volume curve is certainly a gross oversimplification. Recruitment is not complete at the LIP and continues at higher inflating pressures.\textsuperscript{29} Similarly, the UIP does not necessarily reflect the onset of overdistension. Instead, it may represent the point at which recruitment is complete and therefore compliance decreases. Furthermore, inflation may be expanding alveoli without necessarily overdistending them.\textsuperscript{22} In addition, it is difficult to show that recruitment-derecruitment actually occurs,\textsuperscript{26} and dynamic ventilation may not follow the pattern of the static pressure-volume curve. Indeed, a recent study using saline lavaged rabbits suggested that ventilation follows the deflation limb of the pressure-volume curve, provided an adequate recruitment manoeuvre is performed.\textsuperscript{27} Thus, theoretically, a lung could be maintained in a recruited state at lower airway pressures than the inflation limb of the pressure-volume curve would indicate and, conversely, pressures applied on the basis of the inflation limb would cause overdistension. Finally, but of perhaps greatest importance, the damaged lung in the clinical setting is not homogeneously affected, as detailed below. Applied airway pressure that may be ideal to recruit and ventilate some lung units may be inadequate to open the most densely atelectatic regions, and yet simultaneously cause overdistension in the most compliant areas.\textsuperscript{28,29}

Other ventilator parameters

Few studies have addressed the effect of ventilator parameters other than tidal volume, airway pressure, and PEEP in VILI. Increased respiratory frequency may augment lung injury through greater stress cycling, a phenomenon well described in engineering, or through the deactivation of surfactant. Isolated perfused rabbit lungs ventilated with a frequency of 20 breaths/min show greater oedema and perivascular haemorrhage than those ventilated at 3 breaths/min.\textsuperscript{30} The relevance of these findings to clinical practice is unclear.

Inspired oxygen fraction

Oxidant stress is believed to be an important mechanism in mediating lung injury in a variety of lung diseases including ARDS, and exposure of animals or humans to a high inspired oxygen fraction (F\textsubscript{IO\textsubscript{2}}) leads to lung damage, probably through the increased generation of reactive oxygen species.\textsuperscript{31,32} Current practice in ARDS is to use the lowest F\textsubscript{IO\textsubscript{2}} giving an oxygen saturation of around 90%.

Carbon dioxide

Arterial carbon dioxide tensions (P\textsubscript{ACO\textsubscript{2}}) reflect minute ventilation. The advent of protective ventilatory strategies in ARDS, with lower tidal volumes and minute ventilation, was accompanied by the acceptance of higher levels of P\textsubscript{ACO\textsubscript{2}} (permissive hypercapnia) and mild respiratory acidosis.\textsuperscript{33} Rather than being harmful, some animal studies suggest that hypercapnia exerts a protective effect in lung injury, although to date there is no clear evidence from clinical studies.\textsuperscript{34}

Patient determinants of VILI

The condition of the ventilated lung is of considerable importance in determining susceptibility to VILI. At one extreme,
VILI does not appear to be a clinical problem in patients with normal lungs who can undergo prolonged periods of mechanical ventilation without detrimental effect. In these instances the pressures and flows within the lung closely resemble the physiological situation. At the other extreme, the grossly abnormal lungs of patients with ARDS are highly susceptible to VILI, and it may be that in some patients no mechanical ventilation strategy is entirely devoid of detrimental effects.

Ventilating the injured lung
Animal studies using isolated lungs and intact animals have indicated that injured lungs are more susceptible to VILI. An important factor underlying this predisposition to VILI is the uneven distribution of disease and inflation seen in injured lungs. Based on the diffuse relatively homogeneous distribution of shadowing on a plain chest radiograph, it was thought that the lung was uniformly affected in ARDS. However, CT scanning showed that the posterior dependent portions of the lung are more severely affected (fig 8.2A), a distribution determined largely by gravity. The greater compliance of less affected areas means that they receive a much greater proportion of the delivered tidal volume. This may result in substantial regional overdistension and hence injury.

In a recent study, piglets with multifocal pneumonia were ventilated using a tidal volume of 15 ml/kg for 43 hours. Approximately 75% of the lung volume was consolidated, so the residual 25% of normally ventilated lung may have received a tidal volume equivalent to 40–50 ml/kg. Histological examination showed emphysema-like lesions in these areas, whereas in consolidated areas the alveoli were "protected" against overdistension, but the bronchioles that remained patent were injured through overdistension and by the forces generated through interdependence and recruitment-derecruitment (fig 8.3). Lesions similar to those described above have been reported in a necropsy series of patients with ARDS; furthermore, CT scans of ARDS survivors have shown greatest residual abnormality in the anterior part of the lung, even though the posterior areas had been most abnormal in the acute phase (fig 8.2B). These changes may be due to injury caused by overdistension.

Other factors that may promote VILI in already injured lungs are surfactant abnormalities and the presence of an activated inflammatory infiltrate which may be further stimulated by mechanical ventilation.

Lung immaturity
The immature lung may be particularly susceptible to VILI. The volume of the lung relative to body weight and the number of alveoli are lower in premature infants, making a tidal volume based on weight potentially more injurious. The resilience of the lung tissue is lower, due to less well developed collagen and elastin elements, and surfactant deficiency leads to alveolar instability and favours airway closure. At delivery the fluid filled, surfactant deficient airways of the preterm neonate require high inflation pressures to establish patency, with potential generation of high shear stress. Preterm lambs show evidence of lung injury after only six high volume insufflations.

MANIFESTATION OF VILI
Pulmonary oedema
Pulmonary oedema is a prominent feature of experimental models of VILI, particularly those using small animals. The high protein content of the oedema fluid suggests that it is, at least in part, due to increased permeability, and experimental studies have implicated changes at both the epithelial and microvascular endothelial barriers. Increased static inflation of fluid filled lung lobes in sheep led to the passage of larger solutes across the epithelium, a finding observed in other models. Increased microvascular permeability has been shown by the redistribution of 125I-labelled albumin into the extravascular space in mechanically ventilated rats,
parallel findings in other species. In contrast to the clear evidence for increased permeability, relatively little is known about the contribution of hydrostatic pressures to the development of pulmonary oedema in mechanical ventilation. This stems largely from the great difficulty in assessing transmural pressures at the microvascular level. Studies in lambs have indicated that high tidal volume ventilation causes a relatively modest increase in transmural pulmonary vascular pressures. Hydrostatic forces may still be important. Firstly, regional differences in lung perfusion and atelectasis may generate far greater filtration forces in some areas and, secondly, in the injured lung even small increases in transmural pressure may greatly increase oedema formation.

Morphological changes
The acute structural changes of “injurious” mechanical ventilation have been best defined using small animal models. Under the light microscope the development of oedema is first evident as perivascular cuffing which progresses to florid interstitial oedema and alveolar flooding with continued ventilation at high pressure. Changes in the endothelium are detectable by electron microscopy within only a few minutes of high airway pressure ventilation of rats, and appear to precede alterations in the epithelium. Some endothelial cells become focally separated from their basement membrane forming intracapillary blebs. Eventually, diffuse alveolar damage is evident; the epithelial surface becomes grossly disrupted in some areas with destruction of type I but sparing of type II cells.

Larger animals have been used to study the longer term effects of mechanical ventilation. In pigs with experimental pneumonia, alveolar damage is seen in the ventilated regions after 2–3 days, with bronchiolar dilatation in the consolidated regions (fig 8.3). An inflammatory reaction also becomes prominent. Ventilation of pigs with high peak airway pressures leads to neutrophil recruitment within 24 hours and fibroproliferative changes after 3–6 days. Similarly, conventional ventilation (tidal volume 12 ml/kg) of saline lavaged rabbits led to accumulation of neutrophils in the lungs, as well as severe epithelial damage and hyaline membrane formation. By contrast, animals ventilated with HFOV had minimal injury. Increased vascular permeability, diffuse alveolar damage, inflammatory cell infiltrates, and later fibroproliferative changes are not specific to VILI. ARDS and other forms of lung injury are associated with identical pathological appearances. The pertinent question for the clinician is the degree to which the changes classically ascribed to ARDS are in fact attributable to VILI?

MECHANISMS OF VILI
The mechanical forces applied through ventilation may have deleterious effects in at least two ways: (1) through physical disruption of the tissues and cells, which depends not only on the magnitude and pattern of the applied stress but also on the resilience of the lung tissue, and (2) through the aberrant activation of cellular mechanisms leading to inappropriate and harmful responses. Both certainly occur, although it is not clear which is more important clinically.

Physical disruption (stress failure)
How forces are generated within the lung
Macklin and Macklin proposed that air leaks are caused by a momentary high pressure gradient between the alveolus and the bronchovascular sheath. Air ruptures across the epithelial surface and tracks along the bronchovascular sheath. It may then pass into the interstitium causing pulmonary interstitial emphysema. Pneumothorax is evident in the pleural space causing pneumomediastinum, into the pericardial cavity leading to pneumopericardium, and so on. The endothelium, in close apposition to the epithelial surface, is subject to stress failure due to forces derived both from transpulmonary and intravascular pressures. The extremely thin blood gas barrier (0.2–0.4 µM) permits free gas exchange by diffusion but exceeds the capillary to high wall stress, determined by the ratio of the wall tension to thickness. In rabbits stress failure occurs at capillary transmural pressures of 52.5 cm H₂O (~40 mm Hg) or greater and the microscopic lesions of endothelial and epithelial disruption are similar to those caused by high volume ventilation.

Importantly, the blood-gas barrier is more prone to stress failure at higher lung volumes, probably due to increased longitudinal forces acting on the blood vessel. The forces generated by mechanical ventilation may therefore interact with those due to pulmonary vascular perfusion to magnify lung injury. Isolated rabbit lungs ventilated with a peak static pressure of 30 cm H₂O exhibit greater oedema and haemorrhage when perfused with high flow rates corresponding to higher pulmonary artery pressures.

Interdependence
Adjacent alveoli and terminal bronchioles share common walls so that forces acting on one lung unit are transmitted to those around it. This phenomenon, known as interdependence, is believed to be important in maintaining uniformity of alveolar size and surfactant function. Under conditions of uniform expansion all lung units will be subject to a similar transalveolar pressure, approximately equal to the alveolar minus the pleural pressure. However, if the lung is unevenly expanded, such forces may vary considerably. When an alveolus collapses the traction forces exerted on its walls by adjacent expanded lung units increase and these are applied to a smaller area. These forces will promote re-expansion at the expense of greatly increased and potentially harmful stress at the interface between collapsed and expanded lung units. At a transpulmonary pressure of 30 cm H₂O it has been calculated that re-expansion pressures could reach 140 cm H₂O. In a necropsy study of patients who had died with ARDS, expanded cavities and pseudocysts were found particularly around atelectatic areas, suggesting that these forces do indeed play a role in VILI.

Recruitment-derecruitment
Theoretically, small airways may become occluded by exudate or apposition of their walls. In either event, the airway pressure required to restore patency greatly exceeds that in an unoccluded condition. The resulting shear stress may damage the airways, particularly if the cycle is repeated with each breath (~20 000 times per day). The pressure required to reopen an occluded airway is inversely proportional to its diameter, which is consistent with the observation that small airway damage in isolated lungs ventilated at zero PEEP occurs more distally as PEEP is applied.

Airway collapse is favoured by surfactant deficiency or conditions in which the interstitial support of the airways is weakened or underdeveloped. Conversely, recruitment-derecruitment may not occur at all in normal lungs, which tolerate periods of negative end expiratory pressure without evident harm.

Importance of surfactant
Surfactant plays a role in VILI in two related ways; firstly, surfactant dysfunction or deficiency appears to amplify the injurious effects of mechanical ventilation and, secondly, ventilation itself can impair surfactant function thereby favouring further lung damage.

Abnormalities of the surfactant system may contribute to injury in the mature lung as in preterm infants. Surfactant isolated into the pleural space with ARDS and experimental models of pneumonia is functionally impaired. This is associated with a decrease in the functionally active large aggregate (LA)
component of the surfactant pool relative to the less active small aggregate (SA) component. Although stretch of type 2 cells in vitro and a modest degree of hyperinflation stimulate surfactant production, more injurious ventilatory strategies of high tidal volume and low PEEP lead to a reduced pool of functional surfactant and a decreased LA:SA ratio, particularly in injured lungs. Large cyclical alterations in the alveolar surface area and the presence of serum proteins in the airspace may be responsible for these changes.

Lungs can be rendered experimentally deficient in surfactant by saline lavage or detergent aerosolisation, and they may behave in a manner similar to those of premature infants. Strategies that maintain lung recruitment, such as HFOV (with recruitment manoeuvres) and conventional mechanical ventilation at high levels of PEEP, appear to be particularly effective in minimising lung injury in these models. Surfactant abnormalities may contribute to VILI in several ways relating to the increase in surface tension:

1. Alveoli and airways are more prone to collapse with generation of shear stress as they are reopened.
2. The uneven expansion of lung units increases regional stress forces through interdependence.
3. The transvascular filtration pressure is increased, promoting oedema formation.

In addition, surfactant is thought to have important immuno-regulatory functions which may become impaired through mechanical ventilation.

From the preceding discussion it is logical to propose that increasing the pool of functioning surfactant might lessen lung injury. Surfactant therapy reduces mortality in the neonatal respiratory distress syndrome and may decrease lung injury. In ARDS a role for surfactant supplementation is not established, partly because of difficulties in delivering adequate amounts of active surfactant to damaged and collapsed lung regions.

Activation of aberrant cellular pathways

Physical forces such as stretch play an important role in physiological processes. In fetal life breathing is essential for lung development and in the mature lung ventilation stimulates surfactant production by type II pneumocytes. Central to this is the concept of mechanotransduction, whereby physical forces are detected by cells and converted into biochemical signals. There is now good evidence that signalling events activated by injurious ventilation play a role in VILI.

The increase in lung vascular permeability induced in isolated perfused rat lungs by high airway pressure ventilation can be blocked by gadolinium in the perfusate. Gadolinium probably exerts this effect through its inhibition of stretch activated cation channels. This indicates that the oedema seen in injurious ventilation is, at least in part, due to the activation of specific cellular processes rather than simply being a reflection of physical disruption of the alveolar-capillary barrier (the "stretched pore" phenomenon).

Considerable attention has focused recently on the release of inflammatory mediators from lung tissue exposed to mechanical forces. A number of studies involving isolated lungs or intact lung injured animals of different species have shown that injurious ventilatory strategies are associated with the release of a variety of proinflammatory mediators, including thromboxane B₂, platelet activating factor, and several cytokines. This humoral inflammatory response can precede overt histological damage and appears to be due to stretch activation of specific pathways, in addition to an inflammatory reaction to non-specific injury. The importance of these mediators in causing lung injury is unknown, and it is conceivable that they exert a beneficial effect in the injured lung. However, studies using rabbit models of VILI have shown that lung damage can be attenuated by administration of anti-tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-α antibodies or interleukin (IL)-1 receptor antagonists, suggesting that these cytokines exert a deleterious effect.

In the preterm lung cytokines generated by mechanical ventilation may interfere with lung development. The term biotrauma has been coined to describe this potentially injurious inflammatory response to physical stress.

Mediators generated in response to injurious ventilation do not remain compartmentalised within the lung. Experiments with perfused mouse lungs and with lung injured rats in vivo have indicated that injurious ventilation leads to increased cytokine levels in the systemic circulation, and recent studies suggest that the same applies in the clinical setting. This has led to the hypothesis that mechanical ventilation can fuel the systemic inflammatory response commonly seen in ARDS and contribute to the development of multiple organ failure (MSOF).

Ventilation may also influence the systemic inflammatory response through translocation of bacteria or their products from the air spaces into the circulation. In dogs and rats bacteraemia is more likely to develop when lungs that have been inoculated with bacteria are ventilated with high tidal volume/zero PEEP compared with less injurious strategies. An analogous effect has been observed in ventilated rabbits following intratracheal administration of lipopolysaccharide (LPS). Injurious ventilation resulted in much higher levels of circulating LPS accompanied by a rise in TNF-α. The possible ways in which ventilation impacts on systemic inflammation and distal organs are summarised in fig 8.4.

CLINICAL CONSEQUENCES OF VILI

Despite the difficulties in distinguishing the effects of mechanical ventilation from those of the underlying condition, there are now clear data showing the clinical impact of
VILI in two conditions—neonatal respiratory distress syndrome and ARDS.

Neonatal chronic lung disease
Most cases of neonatal chronic lung disease (CLD), also known as bronchopulmonary dysplasia, occur in the aftermath of neonatal respiratory distress syndrome. Hyperoxia and mechanical ventilation have been implicated in its aetiology.19 Evidence for the role of mechanical ventilation in this respect includes the observation that neonatal intensive care units with high rates of intubation and ventilation also have high rates of CLD without improvements in mortality or other morbidity.20 At two centres with very different rates of mechanical ventilation of low birth weight infants (75% v 29%) and prevalence of CLD (22% v 4%) multivariate regression analysis indicated that the development of CLD was strongly associated with the initiation of mechanical ventilation.21 Several trials have addressed the use of different ventilatory strategies, particularly HFOV, in neonatal respiratory distress. Despite its theoretical advantages over conventional ventilation in terms of reducing lung injury, the role of HFOV in neonatal respiratory distress remains controversial.22 23

ARDS
The magnitude of the clinical burden of VILI was shown by the recent ARDSNet trial in which 861 patients with ARDS were randomised to receive either a “traditional” tidal volume (12 ml/kg predicted body weight) or a low tidal volume strategy (6 ml/kg). Mortality was 39.8% in the traditional group and 31% in the low volume group. In other words, at least 8.8% of the absolute mortality from ARDS is attributable to VILI. A considerable amount of attention is currently directed at the potential clinical benefits of improving and maintaining lung recruitment, based on the theories outlined above, using higher levels of PEEP or HFOV.

It is interesting to speculate on precisely how VILI increases mortality. The injury to the lung described in experimental models probably occurs in humans, to a greater or lesser degree. However, most deaths in ARDS are from MSOF rather than respiratory failure.24 25 It is therefore likely that mechanical ventilation can influence the development of MSOF, possibly through the release of proinflammatory mediators, as described above. Two recent clinical studies add weight to this hypothesis. Ranieri and coworkers examined the effect of two ventilatory strategies on cytokine levels in ARDS. Forty four patients were randomised either to a “protective” strategy, in which the PEEP and tidal volume were set such that tidal recruitment, based on the theories outlined above, using higher levels of PEEP or HFOV. 

References
3 Macklin MT, Macklin CC. Malignant intestinal epithymia of the lungs and mediastinum as an important occult complication in many respiratory diseases and other conditions: an interpretation of the clinical literature in the light of laboratory experiment. Medicine 1944;23:281–352.

**Conclusion**
Extensive research over the past 30 years has identified key determinants of VILI. From this, practice has been modified in an attempt to minimise lung damage. In the case of ARDS, ventilation with lower tidal volumes has been shown to reduce mortality.

One of the most exciting developments has been the realisation that VILI may be caused not only by the mechanical disruption of lung tissue, but also by the inappropriate activation of cellular pathways. Such mechanisms may contribute to non-pulmonary organ damage. Future treatments to minimise the impact of VILI may target these mechanisms at the molecular level, in addition to developing less injurious ventilatory strategies.
Respiratory Management in Critical Care

58

Riphagen S

Dreyfuss D

Hickling KG

Hernandez LA

Laffey JG

Martynowicz MA

Pathol 1991; 1971;

severe adult respiratory distress syndrome.

In: Fenn

permeability in dog lungs due to high airway pressures.

and cytokine release is associated with activation of NF

1989; 1998;

of respiratory distress syndrome. A prospective randomized

210

Kong DL. High tidal volume ventilation produces increased

1990; 1998;

1997;

1980;

1998; 1999;

1988;

137

55

53

136

70

1996;

Mathieu-Costello OA

Am Rev Respir Dis 1993; 1997;

53

52

1989;

1982;

1998;

1998;

1984;

Chiumello D

53

86

87

84

60

205

83

77

68

21

23

27

120

1982;

26

1989;

309

56

Dawson CA, Gerber BS,

63

87

1970;

1970;

52

57

82

1984;

815–9.

1568–9.

1984:

1988;

29–35.

55

54

58

66

66

62

1985.

59

51

1987;

52

50

54

59

46

24

1982:

3245–55.

50

30

1994:

328

181–6.

1984;

1985;

81

1989;

1989;

55

50

1993;

54

68

58–66.

46

1835–46.

1325–8.

1938–51.

1938–51.

1986;

57

54

100–117.

1991; 170:313–42.

27–33.


1986:27–33.

254–6.

1988; 1997;

1989;

1989;

1989;

1989;

1989;

1991;

1991;

Stress failure in

1990:

1995:

1992:

1991;

1994;

1995;

1991;

55

1992:

1991;

1991;

1995;

1995:

1991:

1991;

1991;

1990:

55

54

51

1997:

1990:

156–75.

1991:

1987;

1994:

1987;

1994:

1994:

1994:

1990:

1994:

1997:

1993:

1997:

1993:

1995:

1995:

1997:

1995:

1995:

1995:

1993:

1997:

1997:

1997:

1997:

1994:

1988:

1988:

1991:

1991:

1995:

1999:

1999:

1999:

1999:

1999:

1999:

1999:

1999:

50

50

50

50

50

50

50

50

50

50

50

50

50

50

50

50

50
103 Hudson LD, Stengberg KP. Epidemiology of acute lung injury and ARDS. Chest 1999;116:74–82S.
9 Ventilatory management of acute lung injury/acute respiratory distress syndrome

J J Cordingley, B F Keogh

The ventilatory management of patients with acute lung injury (ALI) and acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) has evolved in conjunction with advances in understanding of the underlying pathophysiology. In particular, evidence that mechanical ventilation has an influence on lung injury and patient outcome has emerged over the past three decades. The present understanding of optimal ventilatory management is outlined and other methods of respiratory support are reviewed.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

The pathophysiology of ARDS is reviewed by Bellingan in chapter 6. However, it is useful to highlight important features relevant to ventilatory management, in particular the anatomical distribution of pulmonary pathology and the potential for ventilator induced lung injury.

The original description of ARDS included the presence of bilateral infiltrates on the chest radiograph. Computerised tomographic (CT) scanning has shown that parenchymal consolidation, far from being evenly distributed, is concentrated in dependent lung regions leaving non-dependent lung relatively spared. This pathological distribution of aerated lung lying over areas of dense consolidation has led to comparisons with ventilation of a much smaller or “baby lung” and has important implications for ventilatory management. Thus, the application of normal physiological tidal volumes can lead to overdistension of the small volume of normally aerated lung, while failing to recruit consolidated dependent regions.

Ventilator induced lung injury can occur by several mechanisms: oxygen toxicity from the use of high FiO₂, (see chapter 8) overdistension of the lung causing local damage and further inflammation, injurious cyclical opening and closing of alveoli from ventilation at low lung volumes, and by increasing systemic levels of inflammatory cytokines.

Ventilatory strategies must therefore be tailored to minimise the risk of inducing or exacerbating lung injury.

RESPIRATORY MECHANICS

Decreased lung compliance is a prominent feature of ARDS. The static compliance of the respiratory system (lung + chest wall) in a ventilated patient is calculated by dividing the tidal volume (Vt) by end inspiratory plateau pressure (Pplat) minus end expiratory pressure + intrinsic PEEP (PEEPi). As the pathology of ARDS is heterogeneous, calculating static compliance does not provide information about regional variations in lung recruitment and varies according to lung volume. Much attention has therefore focused on analysis of the pressure-volume (PV) curve.

The static PV curve of the respiratory system can be obtained by inserting a pause during an inflation-deflation cycle. A number of different methods have been described including the use of a large syringe (super-syringe), or holding a mechanical ventilator at end inspiration of varying tidal volumes. The principles and methods of PV curve measurement have recently been reviewed.

The PV curves thus obtained are sigmoidal and have an inspiratory limb that usually includes a point above which further increases in pressure cause little increase in volume. Currently, ventilators used routinely in intensive care units do not have automated functions to obtain a static PV curve. Moreover, the static PV curve only provides information about accessible lung and also includes chest wall compliance. Separating the lung and chest wall components requires the use of oesophageal pressure measurement.

Despite these limitations, many advances in clinical management in patients with ALI/ARDS have been based on consideration of static PV curves. It has recently been suggested that use of the lower and upper inflection points of the static PV curve as indicators of recruitment and overdistension in order to adjust ventilator settings in patients with ARDS is unreliable. It is argued that alveolar recruitment occurs beyond the lower inflection point and that further information, including the deflation PV curve, is required to determine optimal ventilator settings for an individual patient. Analysis of the inspiratory pressure-time curve under conditions of constant flow may also provide useful information about lung recruitment.

VENTILATORY STRATEGIES IN ARDS

The goals of ventilating patients with ALI/ARDS are to maintain adequate gas exchange and avoid ventilator induced lung injury.

Maintenance of adequate gas exchange

Oxygen

High concentrations of inspired oxygen should be avoided to limit the risk of oxygen toxicity and to avoid reabsorption atelectasis. Arterial oxygen saturation (SaO₂) is used as a target in preference to arterial oxygen tension (PaO₂) because oxygen delivery and tissue oxygenation are influenced by individual patient. Normal values of around 90% are commonly accepted but oxygen delivery decreases quickly below 88%
because of the shape of the oxyhaemoglobin dissociation curve. However, if a higher S\textsubscript{ao2} can only be obtained by increasing airway pressure to levels that result in haemodynamic compromise, then a lower S\textsubscript{ao2} may have to be accepted.

There is no clinical evidence to support the use of specific Fi\textsubscript{O2} thresholds, but it is common clinical practice to decrease Fi\textsubscript{O2} below 0.6 as quickly as possible.

Oxygenation can be improved by increased alveolar recruitment through the application of higher airway pressure provided that ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) matching is not adversely affected by the haemodynamic consequences of increased intrathoracic pressure. Lung recruitment is usually obtained by applying extrinsic PEEP, increasing the inspiratory-expiratory (I:E) ratio, or by specific recruitment manoeuvres (discussed below).

Carbon dioxide

Limiting tidal volume and peak pressure to reduce ventilator induced lung injury may cause hypercapnia. Strategies used to manage hypercapnia have included increasing tidal volume and airway pressure, or increasing CO\textsubscript{2} removal with techniques such as tracheal gas insufflation or extracorporeal CO\textsubscript{2} removal. In 1990 it was reported that the alternative of simply allowing CO\textsubscript{2} to rise to a higher level (permissive hypercapnia) and maintaining limits on tidal volume and airway pressure was associated with a significantly lower than predicted mortality from ARDS.\textsuperscript{11}

The physiological consequences of hypercapnia are respiratory acidity, increased cardiac output, and pulmonary hypertension. Neurological changes include increased cerebral blood flow, and cerebral oedema and intracranial haemorrhage have been reported.\textsuperscript{12} With severe acidosis there may be myocardial depression, arrhythmias, and decreased response to exogenous inotropes. Renal compensation for the respiratory acidosis occurs slowly.

Unfortunately there are no data to confirm the degree of respiratory acidity that is safe. Recent studies have allowed hypercapnia as part of lung protective ventilatory protocols.\textsuperscript{13-15,19} Arterial pH was lower in the lung protective groups and the ARDSNet study included the use of sodium bicarbonate to correct arterial pH to normal.\textsuperscript{1} At present no recommendations can be made concerning the management of respiratory acidosis induced by permissive hypercapnia. However, if bicarbonate is infused, it should be administered slowly to allow CO\textsubscript{2} excretion and avoid worsening of intracellular acidosis.

One method used to increase CO\textsubscript{2} clearance is insufflation of gas into the trachea to flush out dead space CO\textsubscript{2} and reduce rebreathing.\textsuperscript{20} Tracheal gas insufflation has been used both continuously and during expiration only. As no commercially available ventilator includes this technique, modifications are required to the ventilator circuit and settings to prevent inadvertent and potentially dangerous increases in intrinsic PEEP, VT, and peak airway pressure.

In adult patients with ARDS, managed using pressure control ventilation, the introduction of continuous tracheal gas insufflation allowed a decrease in airway pressure of 5 cm H\textsubscript{2}O without increasing arterial carbon dioxide tension (Paco\textsubscript{2})\textsuperscript{20}. Tracheal gas insufflation may therefore be useful when permissive hypercapnia is contraindicated. However, managing the appropriate ventilator settings and adjustment is complicated, with real potential for iatrogenic injury.

In practice, Paco\textsubscript{2} is allowed to rise during lung protective volume and pressure limited ventilation. PEEP levels of 2–3 times normal seem to be well tolerated for prolonged periods. Renal compensation for respiratory acidosis occurs over several days. Many clinicians infuse sodium bicarbonate slowly if arterial pH falls below 7.20.

Avoidance of ventilator induced lung injury

Traditional mechanical ventilation (as applied during routine general anaesthesia) involves tidal volumes that are relatively large (10–15 ml/kg) in order to reduce atelectasis. PEEP levels are adjusted to prevent oxygenation but high levels are generally avoided to prevent cardiovascular instability related to increased intrathoracic pressure. Present understanding of ventilator induced lung injury suggests that traditional mechanical ventilation, using high tidal volumes and low PEEP, is likely to enhance lung injury in patients with ARDS. Five randomised studies of “lung protective” ventilation in ARDS have recently been published, four of which investigated limitation of tidal volume to prevent injury from overdistension (table 9.1).

In these studies the protective ventilatory strategy was directed at preventing lung overdistension and was not designed to look at differences in ventilation at low lung volumes. Only the largest study (ARDSNet)\textsuperscript{16} showed an advantage of such a protective strategy. The ARDSNet study had the largest difference in VT and Pplat between the groups, the highest power, and was the only study to correct respiratory acidosis (table 9.2).

Other studies have addressed the issue of adjustment of ventilatory support based on PV curve characteristics. Amato et al\textsuperscript{17} randomised 53 patients with early ARDS to either traditional ventilation (volume cycled, VT 12 ml/kg, minimum PEEP guided by Fi\textsubscript{O2}, normal Paco\textsubscript{2}) or a lung protective strategy (PEEP adjusted to above the lower inflection point of a static PV curve, VT <6 ml/kg, permissive hypercapnia, and pressure limited ventilatory mode with PIP limited to <40 cm H\textsubscript{2}O). Patients in the lung protective group had improved indices of oxygenation, compliance, and weaning rates. Mortality in the traditional ventilation group was worse at 28 days (71% v 45%, p<0.001) and hospital discharge (71% v 45%, p=0.37). By using the static PV curve to adjust PEEP in the protective ventilation group, this study also addressed the issue of ventilator induced damage by cyclical opening and closure of alveoli. The hospital mortality was very high in the traditional ventilation group, making this study difficult to interpret. Further clinical investigation into the role of higher levels of PEEP in combination with recruitment manoeuvres has been undertaken by the ARDSNet group. Patients with ALI or ARDS were randomised to a high PEEP/lower Fi\textsubscript{O2} or low PEEP/high Fi\textsubscript{O2} strategy. The study (ALVEOLI) was stopped after 550 patients were enrolled because an interim analysis demonstrated lack of efficacy.

Considerable controversy over clinical trials of low tidal volume for ventilation in ARDS has arisen following the publication of a meta-analysis suggesting that differences in patient survival in the five studies included could be explained by variations in the conventional ventilation protocols.\textsuperscript{21} These criticisms were rejected by the ARDS Network.\textsuperscript{22}

Pressure and volume limited ventilation

Invasive ventilation of adult patients has traditionally been provided by delivering a set tidal volume at a set rate and volume. However, if bicarbonate is infused, it should be administered continuously and during expiration only. As no commercially available ventilator includes this technique, modifications are required to the ventilator circuit and settings to prevent inadvertent and potentially dangerous increases in intrinsic PEEP, VT, and peak airway pressure.

Figure 9.1 Schematic representation of a static pressure-volume curve of the respiratory system from a patient with ARDS. Note the lower and upper inflection points of the inspiratory limb.
limited to 30–35 cm H\textsubscript{2}O to prevent lung overdistension—that
the traditional 10–12 ml/kg and the peak pressure should be
 tidal volume should be set in the region of 6 ml/kg rather than
 maintaining a constant minute volume and Pa CO\textsubscript{2} under con-
 inspiratory flow. This technique has the advantage of
 changing respiratory system compliance providing that preset limits of airway pressure are not reached. Another
 strategy that has been used increasing over the last 10 years is to use pressure controlled ventilation in which a decelerat-
 ing inspiratory flow profile is applied to a set pressure limit.
 Changes in compliance during pressure control ventilation
 will result in variable minute volume and Paco\textsubscript{o}, but this mode has the advantage of limiting pressure to a set level. More
 sophisticated mechanical ventilators have allowed adjustment of
 more parameters in each mode and have made the distinction
 between these two types of ventilation blurred. Studies of
 volume versus pressure controlled ventilation in ARDS have
 been reported but have been too small to detect any important
 outcome differences. The largest study of ventilation in
 ARDS reported an outcome difference between two protocols
 using volume controlled ventilation, suggesting that settings
 rather than the mode is the important issue.\textsuperscript{1}

 Whatever mode of ventilation is used, it is now clear that
tidal volume should be set in the region of 6 ml/kg rather than the
 traditional 10–12 ml/kg and the peak pressure should be
 limited to 30–35 cm H\textsubscript{2}O to prevent lung overdistension—that is, inspiration should be terminated before the upper
 inflection point on the PV curve.

 **PEEP**

 The application of PEEP improves oxygenation by providing
 movement of fluid from the alveolar to the interstitial space, recruitment of small airways and collapsed alveoli, and an increase in functional residual capacity (FRC). In addition, cyclical collapse and low volume lung injury is attenuated. Increased Pao\textsubscript{o}, induced by PEEP was found to be correlated with the volume of lung recruited.\textsuperscript{26}

 In theory, setting PEEP above the lower inflection point may
 prevent derecruitment and low lung volume ventilator associ-
 ated injury. As discussed above, adjusting the level of PEEP to
 2 cm H\textsubscript{2}O above the lower inflection point was part of a lung
 ventilatory strategy that was advantageous.\textsuperscript{27} In a crossover
 study of 15 patients mechanically ventilated because of ALI, lung volume recruitment and Pao\textsubscript{o} were increased with the combination of lower Vt (6 ml/kg) and increased PEEP at constant Pplat.\textsuperscript{27}

 It has been suggested that the effect of PEEP on recruitment in
 ARDS varies according to the regional distribution of consolidation. Hence, PEEP had little effect on lobar consoli-
 dation but induced the greatest reduction in non-aerated lung
 in patients with diffuse CT abnormalities.\textsuperscript{28} Current clinical practice in the absence of static PCV curve measurement is to set PEEP at a relatively high level such as 15 cm H\textsubscript{2}O in patients with ARDS.

 **Inspiratory time**

 Prolongation of the inspiratory time with an increased I:E ratio is commonly used as a method of recruitment. Mean air-
 way pressure is increased. Shortening of expiratory time can
 cause hyperinflation and increase intrinsic PEEP (PEEPi). Providing that ventilation is pressure limited, PEEPi can be
 manipulated to increase recruitment further. In volume
 control modes of ventilation without pressure limitation, PEEPi levels can cause overdistension and haemodynamic
 compromise. No clinical outcome studies have specifically
 addressed inspiratory time or levels of PEEPi. It is common
 practice during pressure control ventilation to increase the I:E ratio to 1:1 or 2:1 (inverse ratio ventilation) with close moni-
toring of PEEPi and haemodynamics.

 **Recruitment manoeuvres**

 There has been renewed interest recently in manoeuvres
 aimed at increasing alveolar recruitment following the recog-
nition that higher levels of PEEP are necessary to sustain any
 benefit obtained by such manoeuvres, and that any sudden
 reduction such as ventilator disconnection for suctioning
 leads to derecruitment.

 The sigh function involves the delivery of intermittent
 breaths of larger tidal volume, administered either via the
 mechanical ventilators or by hand. Sighs delivered to patients
 with ARDS increase alveolar recruitment but the benefit is
 short lived, lasting less than 30 minutes.\textsuperscript{29} The same authors
 also suggest that secondary ARDS (ARDS as a result of
 non-pulmonary disease) is more responsive to sighs than pri-
 mary ARDS.

 Sustained inflation or continuous positive airway pressure
 (CPAP) is another form of recruitment manoeuvre. Several
 investigators have reported the effects of different manoeuvres
 in patients with ARDS (table 9.3).

 **Table 9.1** Randomised prospective studies of ventilatory strategies to limit lung overdistension in patients with ARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>&quot;Protective&quot;</th>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Mortality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stewart (1998)\textsuperscript{15}</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>• Vt &lt;8 ml/kg • PIP &lt;30 cm H\textsubscript{2}O • PEEP levels similar in both groups</td>
<td>• Vt 10–15 ml/kg • PIP &lt;30 cm H\textsubscript{2}O</td>
<td>No difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brochard (1998)\textsuperscript{14}</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>• Vt &lt;10 ml/kg • Pplat &lt;25 cm H\textsubscript{2}O • PEEP levels similar in both groups</td>
<td>• Vt 10 ml/kg • Normocapnia</td>
<td>No difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brower (1999)\textsuperscript{17}</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>• Vt 5–8 ml/kg • Pplat &lt;30 cm H\textsubscript{2}O</td>
<td>• Vt 10–12 ml/kg • Pplat &lt;45–55 cm H\textsubscript{2}O</td>
<td>No difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARDSNet (2000)\textsuperscript{1}</td>
<td>861</td>
<td>• Vt 6 ml/kg • PIP &lt;30 cm H\textsubscript{2}O</td>
<td>• Vt 12 ml/kg • PIP &lt;30 cm H\textsubscript{2}O</td>
<td>Lower in “protective” group (31% v 40%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vt=tidal volume; PIP=peak inspiratory pressure; Pplat=end inspiratory plateau pressure; PEEP=positive end expiratory pressure.

**Table 9.2** Protective lung ventilation protocol from the ARDSNet study\textsuperscript{1}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ventilator mode</td>
<td>Volume assist-control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidal volume (initial) (ml/kg)</td>
<td>6 (adjusted according to plateau pressure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plateau pressure (cm H\textsubscript{2}O)</td>
<td>&lt;30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rate (breaths/min)</td>
<td>6–35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I:E ratio</td>
<td>1:1–1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygenation target</td>
<td>Pao\textsubscript{o} (kPa) 7.3–10.7; Spo\textsubscript{2} (%) 88–95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEEP and Fr\textsubscript{io}</td>
<td>Set according to predetermined combinations (PEEP range 5–24 cm H\textsubscript{2}O)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recruitment manoeuvres may be more effective in patients ventilated with relatively low levels of PEEP. Conversely, they may be less effective and cause lung overdistension in patients with already optimally recruited lungs—that is, with higher levels of PEEP. Recruitment manoeuvres all involve increasing intrathoracic pressure and therefore the risk of barotrauma and cardiovascular instability. At present there are no published data from randomised studies to indicate whether recruitment manoeuvres, of whatever form, influence outcome.

**Spontaneous breathing during positive pressure ventilation (BiPAP, APRV)**

Two modes of ventilation commonly available on mechanical ventilators—biphasic airway pressure (BiPAP) and airway pressure release ventilation (APRV)—allow spontaneous breathing to occur at any stage of the respiratory cycle. In these modes the ventilator cycles between an upper and lower pressure at preset time intervals. Spontaneous breathing during mechanical ventilation decreases intrathoracic pressure and improves V/Q matching and cardiac output. These theoretical benefits have resulted in more widespread use of the BiPAP mode, which provides a range of I:E ratios (APRV applies a very short expiratory time), but again no data exist concerning any influence on outcome.

**PRONE VENTILATION**

Prone position was reported to improve oxygenation in patients with ARDS as long ago as 1976. The mechanism of the improvement in oxygenation on turning prone, seen in about two thirds of patients with ARDS, is complex. The intuitive explanation that regional lung perfusion is primarily dependent on gravity leading to improved perfusion of non-consolidated lung on turning is not substantiated by research. In fact, perfusion to dorsal lung regions predominates whatever the patient’s position, and gravity accounts for less than half the perfusion heterogeneity seen in either the supine or prone position. Changes in regional pleural pressure are more important. The gradient of pleural pressure from negative ventrally to positive dorsally in the supine position is not completely reversed on turning prone, so that the distribution of positive pressure ventilation is more homogenous in the prone position. Thus, recruitment of dorsal lung appears to be the predominant mechanism of improved oxygenation.

Potential problems associated with prone positioning are pressure-induced skin damage, increased venous pressure in the head (facial oedema), eye damage (corneal abrasions, retinal and optic nerve ischaemia), dislodgment of endotracheal tubes and intravascular catheters, and increased intra-abdominal pressure.

A multicentre prospective randomised study of the prone position for adult patients with acute respiratory failure was undertaken in Italy. Patients randomised to prone positioning were assessed daily for the first 10 days and turned prone for at least 6 hours if severity criteria were met. There were no differences in clinical outcome.

**HIGH FREQUENCY VENTILATION**

There has been a resurgence of interest in high frequency ventilation (HFV, rate >60/min) over the last few years. Initial enthusiasm had been tempered by practical difficulties and the lack of clinical outcome data showing any advantage over conventional mechanical ventilation. The recent clinical studies of conventional ventilation demonstrating the advantages of limited VT and maintenance of lung volume have helped to promote interest in HFV. The very low VT (1–5 ml/kg) provided by HFV offers the possibility of maintaining lung volume at a higher point on the PV curve with less risk of causing overdistension. High frequency jet ventilation (HFJV) and high frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV) have been the two most commonly used methods.

**High frequency jet ventilation (HFJV)**

HFJV uses a high pressure gas jet delivered into an endotracheal tube at high frequency (1–10 Hz). Other gas in the ventilator circuit is entrained producing a VT of 2–5 ml/kg that can be adjusted by altering the inspiratory time and/or driving pressure. During HFJV expiration occurs passively. Practical problems encountered are inadequate humidification, potential for gas trapping, difficulty in adjusting ventilator settings, and the need for a specialised endotracheal tube.

HFJV has been investigated in two large prospective randomised studies. In a study of 309 patients being ventilated for different causes of respiratory failure, the use of HFJV resulted in no significant outcome differences. Similarly, a study of 113 patients at risk of ARDS had similar clinical outcomes in both patients ventilated conventionally and in those in whom HFJV was used. These studies did not include recruitment manoeuvres that are now recognised to be important and were underpowered with respect to clinical outcomes such as mortality.

**High frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV)**

HFOV differs from HFV in a number of important aspects. Tidal volume (1–3 ml/kg) is generated by the excursion of an oscillator to generate Vt of 2–5 ml/kg and is variably by altering the frequency, I:E ratio, and oscillator amplitude. The use of an oscillator to generate VT results in active expiration. Mean airway pressure is adjusted by altering the fresh gas flow (bias flow) into the circuit or the expiratory pressure valve. Oxygenation is controlled by altering mean airway pressure or FiO2.

On initiation of HFOV, lung recruitment is achieved by increasing mean airway pressure and monitoring arterial oxygenation. Once optimal recruitment has occurred, mean airway pressures are reduced, taking advantage of the hysteresis of the lung pressure-volume relationship in order to prevent alveolar overdistension. This process needs to be repeated after each episode of derecruitment.

HFOV has been used extensively in neonates, and studies suggest that it is associated with a lower incidence of chronic lung disease than conventional ventilation. HFOV (with a recruitment protocol) was compared with conventional mechanical ventilation in 70 paediatric patients with respiratory failure secondary to diffuse alveolar disease or large air leaks using a crossover (for treatment failure) study design. Overall outcomes were similar with the exception that...
patients randomised to HFOV had a lower requirement for supplemental oxygen at 30 days. After subgroup analysis, mortality was lower in patients treated with HFOV than in those treated with conventional mechanical ventilation only (6% v 40%).

There are few data on the use of HFOV in adult patients. In an observational study of 17 patients with ARDS, HFOV was reported to be effective and safe.13 A prospective randomised controlled trial (Multicentre Oscillator ARDS Trial, MOAT) of HFOV versus conventional ventilation in 148 adults with ARDS was recently reported.14 The HFV group had an early non-sustained improvement in Pao2/Fio2 ratio but there were no significant differences in mortality at 30 days or 6 months. The authors concluded that HFOV was a safe and effective alternative to conventional ventilation.

LIQUID VENTILATION
ARDS is associated with loss of surfactant, a consequent rise in surface tension, and alveolar collapse. Filling the lung with liquid removes the air-liquid interface and supports alveoli, thus preventing collapse. Perfluorocarbons have been used in this approach because they have low surface tension and dissolve oxygen and carbon dioxide readily.

Total liquid ventilation involves filling the entire lung with liquid and using a special ventilator to oxygenate the perfluorocarbon, a technique that is both difficult and expensive. Partial liquid ventilation is a much more practical alternative. The lung is filled to FRC with liquid and ventilated with a conventional mechanical ventilator. Although partial liquid ventilation is practical and safe, no randomised prospective studies against conventional management have yet been published.15 Further information on liquid ventilation can be obtained from a recent review by Leonard.16

OTHER RESPIRATORY SUPPORT
Inhaled vasodilators
The use of inhaled vasodilators in patients with ALI/ARDS is described in chapter 10 and is not discussed further here.

Extracorporeal gas exchange
During extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) venous blood is removed via a cannula in the inferior vena cava or right atrium, passed through a heart-lung machine, and is returned to either the right atrium (veno-venous bypass) or aorta (veno-arterial bypass). In veno-venous bypass, pulmonary and systemic haemodynamics are maintained by the patient’s own cardiovascular function. Veno-arterial bypass allows systemic haemodynamic support as well as gas exchange. Institution of ECMO allows ventilator pressures and volumes to be decreased to prevent further ventilator induced lung injury. In addition, the reduction in intrathoracic pressure allows fluid removal to be carried out with less risk of haemodynamic instability. A pumpless form of extracorporeal gas exchange using arteriovenous cannulation has recently been described.47

ECMO has proven mortality benefit in neonatal ARDS. In adults a single prospective randomised study failed to show a survival advantage over conventional support.16 However, overall survival in both groups was extremely low and the results are not applicable to current practice. Extracorporeal CO removal (ECCOR) involves use of an extracorporeal veno-venous circuit with lower blood flows and oxygenation still occurring via the patient’s lungs. A randomised prospective study of ECCOR compared with conventional support in patients with severe ARDS reported no significant difference in survival.17 Several centres have recently reported observational studies showing high survival rates in adult patients managed with extracorporeal support (table 9.4). These encouraging survival rates should be interpreted, however, in the context of improved survival without ECMO.54 55 A randomised prospective controlled study of ECMO in adult patients is currently underway in Leicester, UK (CESAR trial).

CONCLUSION
The current data relating to conventional ventilation in ARDS suggest that high tidal volumes (12 ml/kg) with high plateau pressure (more than 30–35 cm H2O) are deleterious and that a strategy aimed at preventing overdistension by decreasing tidal volume to 6 ml/kg and limiting peak pressure to <30 cm H2O is associated with lower mortality.51 In addition, ventilation directed at preventing cyclical opening and closing of alveoli by adjusting PEEP according to the PV curve to maintain recruitment may have a role in preventing lung injury. There may also be a role for recruitment manoeuvres, particularly after episodes of derecruitment. High frequency ventilation, including a recruitment protocol, may offer the ultimate lung protective ventilation, but further clinical studies are required.

REFERENCES
Ventilatory management of ALI/ARDS


Our understanding of the pathophysiology and management of the acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) has improved immensely since its original description, but pharmacotherapies have proved disappointing in clinical trials. Several reasons have been proposed for this failure.

- There are no good experimental models of ARDS so that drugs may not have the desired effect or produce unacceptable side effects when used clinically.
- The inflammatory cascades that cause sepsis and ARDS are characterised by widespread redundancy so it is unlikely that a single agent could reverse or terminate such complex processes.
- Although a drug may improve pulmonary function, it may not alter outcome. Fewer than 5% of patients with ARDS die of respiratory failure; the majority suffer from multiple organ failure and succumb after withdrawal of support.
- Enrolling patients with ARDS in clinical trials using the American-European Consensus Conference definition ignores the heterogeneity of the disease. In pathological terms, the acute exudative and fibroproliferative phases present distinct targets for intervention, making the timing of drug administration (after disease onset) crucial. The primary cause(s) of ARDS, the patient’s age and medical history all affect prognosis and possibly drug responsiveness of the condition.

Recent reports suggest that the mortality associated with ARDS may be falling, probably because of advances in supporting critically ill patients. This trend may increase the number of potential survivors and the window of opportunity for pharmacological manipulation of lung injury. Thus, drugs that have been apparent failures in terms of mortality may still have a useful role to play, either in combination with other agents or in subgroups of ARDS patients defined either by their underlying condition or by their stage of lung injury. This chapter reviews the major pharmacological approaches to treating ARDS in the context of modern supportive care (fig 10.1). We conclude with a proposal for future strategies in the non-ventilatory management of ARDS.

**Inhaled Vasodilators**

Nitric oxide (NO) is a free radical gas produced constitutively in the lung by nitric oxide synthase from L-arginine, NADPH, and oxygen. Endothelial cells constitutively release NO, causing pulmonary vasodilation primarily via the secondary messenger cyclic guanosine monophosphate. ARDS is characterised by ventilation-perfusion mismatching which produces arterial hypoxaemia that may in part be caused by disordered endogenous NO activity. Patients with ARDS commonly have mild pulmonary hypertension. Any inhaled vasodilator can augment hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction by selectively vasodilating vessels associated with ventilated alveoli to improve oxygenation (fig 10.2).

Improved oxygenation and direct vascular smooth muscle relaxation by NO also reduce pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR). Vasoconstriction by hypoxia, hypercapnia, thromboxane A₂, and angiotensin II can all be partially reversed by inhaled NO, although the PVR of normal volunteers is not affected. Reducing PVR and consequent improvements in right ventricular function may benefit some patients with ARDS. However, NO does not increase cardiac output in the majority. Reduced arteriolar and venous tone may lower capillary pressure, reducing leakage and further improving gas exchange. Unfortunately, in patients with pulmonary hypertension associated with impaired left ventricular function, pulmonary vascular relaxation may also increase pulmonary oedema.

Endothelial NO also inhibits platelet aggregation and neutrophil adhesion that are likely mediators of lung injury. Although the importance of these actions in ARDS is uncertain, inhaled NO has been used immediately after lung transplantation to reduce ischaemia-reperfusion injury. NO quickly scavenges reactive oxygen species (ROS) including the superoxide anion to produce a less reactive but still potentially harmful product, namely peroxynitrite. Although ROS
are usually kept at low levels in lung tissue by antioxidants and dismutases, these protective systems may be overwhelmed during ARDS. Peroxynitrite oxidises and ni-trolylates proteins, nucleic acids and lipids, including essential components of the surfactant system. However, the clinical significance of peroxynitrite production is unknown.

Approximately 60% of patients with ARDS or acute lung injury (ALI) of all causes respond to inhaled NO, increasing their PaO2 by more than 20%. The effect can frequently be seen in less than 10 minutes or may take several hours. However, in several trials the oxygenation of control groups has risen to meet that of NO treated patients between 24 hours and 4 days. The dose-response relationship between inhaled NO and arterial oxygenation shows considerable interindividual variation. Currently there are no indicators that will predict the response. Maximal improvement in oxygenation is sometimes achieved with 1–2 parts per million (ppm) and occurs at less than 10 ppm in most patients. Maximal reduction in pulmonary artery pressure is usually obtained between 10 and 40 ppm, with no benefit and possible toxicity at doses greater than 80 ppm. United Kingdom guidelines suggest a maximum dose of 40 ppm. Intra-individual variation in response with time is also significant and may be influenced by lung recruitment, co-existent pathology, or the resolution of inflammation. Clinically, it is sometimes difficult to stop inhaled NO without “rebound” pulmonary hypertension and hypoxaemia. The last 1–2 ppm may have to be weaned especially slowly.

The systemic effects of inhaled NO are negligible due to the rapid strong combination of NO with haemoglobin to form methaemoglobin. This is normally reduced to functional haemoglobin and NO is ultimately converted to soluble NO. Methaemoglobinemia produces a functional anaemia and a left shift in the dissociation curve, but rarely causes a clinical problem. Normal levels of methaemoglobin are less than 2% and values less than 5% usually do not need treatment. NO reacts slowly with oxygen and water to form toxic NO2, nitrous and nitric acids. These damage the lung at concentrations as low as 2 ppm. The reaction rate is proportional to the fractional inspired oxygen concentration (FiO2) and the square of the NO concentration. Thus, the contact time and concentrations of the gases should be kept to a minimum. With proper monitoring, delivery systems, and NO doses of less than 40 ppm, NO2 is not a significant problem. Delivery systems that add NO “upstream” of the ventilator allow longer mixing with oxygen and are not recommended. Continuous “downstream” addition of NO may allow NO to collect in the inspiratory limb of the circuit during the expiratory phase of some systems. Synchronised NO delivery during inspiration may be the optimum mode of delivery. NO contained in exhaled gas should be absorbed before release.

Randomised controlled trials in patients with ARDS have shown that, while inhaled NO temporarily improves oxygenation and reduces pulmonary artery pressure in the majority, its use is not associated with an improved outcome (table 10.1). Inhaled NO is therefore not a standard treatment for ARDS. However, patients with severe refractory hypoxaemia and inadequate right ventricular function secondary to pulmonary hypertension may benefit from inhaled NO. NO may also protect patients whose oxygenation might otherwise depend upon a potentially damaging ventilatory strategy. In small studies the pulmonary vasconstrictor almitrine improved oxygenation in patients with ARDS. It has been suggested that low dose intravenous almitrine potentiates hypoxic pulmonary vasconstriction and the combination of almitrine and inhaled NO may improve oxygenation synergistically in patients with ARDS.

Prostacyclin (PGI2) is an endothelium-derived prosta-glandin vasodilator that inhibits platelet aggregation and neutrophil adhesion. Its mechanism of action differs from NO in that smooth muscle relaxation is associated with a rise in cytoplasmic cyclic adenosine monophosphate. Its half life is only 2–3 minutes but it is not metabolised by the lung, so when administered intravenously, PGI reduces pulmonary vascular resistance but may also increase intrapulmonary shunting and cause systemic hypotension. However, neb-ulised PGI2 (0–50 ng/kg/min) or alprostadil (PGI2, 20–80 µg/h) produce equivalent effects to inhaled NO with minimal systemic side effects and without measurable platelet dysfunction, but there have been no large randomised trials of

Figure 10.1  Suggested treatment algorithm for acute lung injury (ALI) and ARDS. AECC=American-European Consensus Conference 1993; PAC=pulmonary artery catheter; CT=computed tomography; BAL=bronchoalveolar lavage; FiO2=fractional inspired oxygen concentration; SaO2=arterial oxygen saturation.
these therapies. Nevertheless, the relatively simple delivery system, harmless metabolites, and no requirement for special monitoring make nebulised PGI2 an attractive alternative to inhaled NO, despite its expense.

**CORTICOSTEROIDS**

Corticosteroids reduce the production of a great number of inflammatory and profibrotic mediators by many mechanisms. The importance of steroid therapy to the resolution of

---

**Table 10.1** Randomised controlled trials of inhaled nitric oxide (NO) in patients with ARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>No of patients</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
<th>Blinded</th>
<th>Inhaled NO dose (ppm)</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lundin et al (1999)</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>ALI (American-European Consensus Conference) and 18–96 hours ventilation with ( \text{Paco}_2/\text{FiO}_2 &lt; 22 ) kPa, PEEP at least 5 cm H(_2)O, mean airway pressure &gt;10 cm H(_2)O and I:E 1:2–2:1</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>2–40</td>
<td>30 days</td>
<td>180 randomised responded to NO. The frequency of reversal of ALI did not differ from controls. Development of severe respiratory failure less (2.2% v 10.3%) in NO treated group. Mortality not altered (44% v 40% control).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dellinger et al (1998)</td>
<td>177</td>
<td>ARDS (American-European Consensus Conference) within 72 hours of onset and PEEP at least 8 cm H(_2)O</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1.25–80</td>
<td>28 days</td>
<td>Pa(_2) increased &gt;20% in first 4 hours in 60% of patients treated with NO and 24% of controls. Fi(_2)O and intensity of ventilation could be reduced in first 4 days. No difference in mortality (30% v 32–38% in NO treated groups).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michael et al (1998)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>ARDS (American-European Consensus Conference) and Fi(_2)O at least 0.8 for 12 hours or 0.65 for 24 hours</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>5–20</td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td>NO improved Pa(_2)/Fi(_2)O by at least 20% and allowed a decrease in Fi(_2)O of at least 0.15 only in the first 24 hours in more treated patients than controls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troncy (1998)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Murray score at least 2.5</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>0.5–40</td>
<td>30 days</td>
<td>NO improved oxygenation only in the first 24 hours in more treated patients than controls. Mortality (60% v 67% in control) not altered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Published trials of short term, high dose steroid therapy in patients with ARDS

Table 10.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>No of patients</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
<th>Control group</th>
<th>Randomised</th>
<th>Prospective</th>
<th>Blinded</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meduri et al (1996)</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>Established ARDS of &gt;3 weeks</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>3–6 weeks</td>
<td>Reduction in PaO2/FiO2 and mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biffl et al (1994)</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>Late ARDS</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>81% survival</td>
<td>Improved survival with reduced incidence of ARDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paone et al (1991)</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>Late ARDS</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Until extubation</td>
<td>Reduction in LIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luce et al (1987)</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Severe sepsis and septic shock</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>24 h</td>
<td>No mortality benefit, increased mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonet et al (1985)</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>ARDS</td>
<td>Yes (mannitol placebo)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>24 h</td>
<td>No mortality benefit, increased mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucas et al (1985)</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>Post-injury hypovolaemic ARDS</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>48 h</td>
<td>Improved mortality</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LIS = lung injury score; MODS = multiple organ dysfunction syndrome.

SURFACTANT

Type II alveolar cells synthesise and recycle surfactant phospholipids and proteins. Surfactant lowers alveolar surface tension and prevents collapse at low lung volumes. The same effects reduce the hydrostatic pressure gradient favouring fluid movement into the alveolar space. Surfactant also has anti-inflammatory and antimicrobial properties. During ARDS, surfactant activity may be deficient because of reduced fluid movement into the alveolar space. Surfactant also has anti-inflammatory and antimicrobial properties. During ARDS, surfactant activity may be deficient because of reduced fluid movement into the alveolar space. Surfactant also has anti-inflammatory and antimicrobial properties. During ARDS, surfactant activity may be deficient because of reduced fluid movement into the alveolar space. Surfactant also has anti-inflammatory and antimicrobial properties. During ARDS, surfactant activity may be deficient because of reduced fluid movement into the alveolar space.

Various preparations, doses, administration regimens, and delivery techniques have been proposed. Phospholipids alone are inferior to composites of lipid and surfactant proteins. The amount of drug required varies with the type of administration technique—intratracheal delivery, aerosolisation in ventilator gas, and direct bronchoscopic instillation. Simultaneous segmental lavage has been combined with the latter approach and this process itself may benefit some patients. The optimum timing and duration of surfactant therapy is still to be determined.

A phase III clinical trial of one aerosolised preparation in sepsis induced ARDS has been conducted on a background of improved oxygenation in previous reports. No significant effect was seen on oxygenation, duration of ventilation, or survival with up to 5 days of continuous treatment beginning within 48 hours of ventilation. However, this study has been criticised because the compound used contained no protein
and aerosolisation may have delivered less than 5 mg/kg/day of phospholipid when investigations suggest instillation of 300 mg/kg/day may be required. Bronchoalveolar surfactant administered intratracheally in a smaller trial has shown that higher doses (100 mg/kg qds) are required to alter alveolar surfactant composition.33 This dose improved oxygenation over 120 hours and a trend was observed towards reduced mortality at 28 days. Total bronchopulmonary segmental lavage with 30 ml per segment of a synthetic protein containing surfactant was safe and effective at improving oxygenation within 72 hours of the onset of sepsis induced ARDS.34 Despite these trials, the use of surfactant in ARDS remains experimental. Successful use of surfactant in animal models of lung injury and in neonatal respiratory distress syndrome suggests that efficient administration of an effective substitute could be beneficial in ARDS. The goals of treatment would include both improved gas exchange and protection against ventilator induced lung injury.

IMMUNONUTRITION

Avoiding nutritional depletion while delivering a high fat, low carbohydrate diet to reduce carbon dioxide production and ventilatory demand is appropriate for patients with ARDS.35 Immunonutrition aims to influence inflammation positively and to protect gastrointestinal integrity. However, supplying enteral nutrition of any type may stimulate gastrointestinal and pulmonary IgA defence mechanisms.36 In vitro, dietary additives improve depressed immune cell function from some critically ill patients and attenuate the production of proinflammatory mediators in others.

The amino acids glutamine and arginine may be useful dietary additives for patients at risk of or with established ARDS.37 Enterocytes metabolise glutamine in a manner that enhances intestinal mucosal integrity and reduces translocation of bacteria and toxins into the portal circulation that may fuel a systemic inflammatory response. Glutamine and arginine also augment lymphocyte function, and arginine improves monocyte function in critically injured patients.38 Arginine supplementation may also increase NO production, alter vascular tone, and augment free radical mediated antibacterial defences. Similarly, omega-3 fatty acids such as eicosapentaenoic acid and the unsaturated oil gamma-linolenic acid reduce proinflammatory cytokine and eicosanoid production.39 Less biologically active eicosanoids such as prostaglandin PGE, thromboxane TXA, and leukotriene LTB are produced from these unsaturated fats by cyclo-oxygenase (COX) and 5-lipoxygenase during inflammation. Animal experiments suggest that polyunsaturated fatty acids can reduce pulmonary vascular resistance, lung neutrophil infiltration and capillary leak, and pulmonary oedema. The role of leukotrienes in developing ARDS.

Leukotrienes (LT) are derived from arachidonic acid by 5-lipoxygenase. LTB, is a potent neutrophil chemokine while LTC and LTD cause pulmonary vasoconstriction, capillary leak, and pulmonary oedema. The role of leukotrienes in ARDS has been less well researched but bronchoalveolar lavage fluid from patients with ARDS contains increased concentrations of LTD, LTC and LTD, which may be markers for developing ARDS.40 Ketoconazole is an imidazole antifungal drug that inhibits thromboxane synthase and 5-lipoxygenase without inhibiting COX. Ketoconazole may therefore have a dual anti-inflammatory action in ARDS by inhibiting inflammatory eicosanoid synthesis and directing COX products down other less inflammatory metabolic paths such as those synthesising prostacyclin or PGE.41 Four trials have used enteral ketoconazole in patients at risk of or with ARDS. The incidence of acute respiratory failure was reduced in high risk surgical patients and other critically ill patients.42–44 However, an ARDS Network trial (http://hedwig.mgh.harvard.edu/ ardsnct) in patients with established ARDS of medical and surgical aetiology found no differences in in-hospital mortality, ventilator free days at day 28, organ failure free days, or markers of gas exchange between patients given ketoconazole or placebo.44 This trial achieved plasma levels of ketoconazole higher than targeted previously but could not demonstrate a reduction in thromboxane production in vivo. The effect of decreasing thromboxane synthesis in ARDS is therefore still unknown. It is still possible that ketoconazole in surgical and trauma patients at risk of or with incipient pulmonary injury may be beneficial.

PROSTAGLANDIN E

Intravenous PGE causes both pulmonary and systemic vasodilation and, in some critically ill patients, increases cardiac output and oxygen delivery.45 Although the effect on the pulmonary circulation is usually small, vasodilatation is more marked under hypoxic conditions, and the nebulated drug improves ventilation-perfusion matching.46 PGE also inhibits platelet aggregation and neutrophil adhesion. The initial trial of PGE47 showed improved survival in trauma patients with respiratory failure. However, this benefit could not be reproduced in a subsequent multicentre trial48 in patients suffering from lung injury precipitated by surgery, trauma, or sepsis. The dose of PGE was limited by side effects, particularly systemic hypotension. More recent trials have used liposome technology to increase drug delivery while mitigating side effects.49 The use of a liposome itself is associated with immune modulating effects including downregulation of neutrophil adhesion molecules. A combined PGE-liposome preparation in a rodent model of ALI reduced pulmonary neutrophil infiltration and capillary leak.50 However, although the phase II and III trials of liposomal PGE, showed that patients with ARDS receiving the drug had more rapid improvements in the Pao/Fio ratio, neither a survival benefit nor a reduced requirement for ventilatory support was found in the treatment group.51–53 Retrospective subgroup analysis suggested that high dose therapy might reduce the time to extubation.

THROMBOXANE SYNTHASE AND 5-LIPOXYGENASE INHIBITORS

Thromboxane and leukotrienes are in part responsible for the pulmonary hypertension and hypoxaemia of ARDS. Pulmonary vascular smooth muscle cells, endothelial cells, platelets, and neutrophils all release TXA, on stimulation. TXA, can initiate microvascular thromboses consisting of neutrophil and platelet aggregates that are responsible for perfusion abnormalities and recurrent ischaemia-reperfusion injury to the lung. The vasoconstrictive effect of TXA, similarly contributes to impaired gas exchange.54 In animal models of lung injury thromboxane synthase inhibition reduced pulmonary oedema formation and inhibited microembolism, but pulmonary hypertension was only partially relieved.55 Similarly, improved oxygenation and reduced pulmonary hypertension have been found in small trials of a thromboxane receptor antagonist in patients with ARDS.

Leukotrienes (LT) are derived from arachidonic acid by 5-lipoxygenase. LTB, is a potent neutrophil chemokine while LTC and LTD cause pulmonary vasoconstriction, capillary leak, and pulmonary oedema. The role of leukotrienes in ARDS has been less well researched but bronchoalveolar lavage fluid from patients with ARDS contains increased concentrations of LTD, LTC and LTD, which may be markers for developing ARDS.56 Ketoconazole is an imidazole antifungal drug that inhibits thromboxane synthase and 5-lipoxygenase without inhibiting COX. Ketoconazole may therefore have a dual anti-inflammatory action in ARDS by inhibiting inflammatory eicosanoid synthesis and directing COX products down other less inflammatory metabolic paths such as those synthesising prostacyclin or PGE. Four trials have used enteral ketoconazole in patients at risk of or with ARDS. The incidence of acute respiratory failure was reduced in high risk surgical patients and other critically ill patients.42–44 However, an ARDS Network trial (http://hedwig.mgh.harvard.edu/ ardsnct) in patients with established ARDS of medical and surgical aetiology found no differences in in-hospital mortality, ventilator free days at day 28, organ failure free days, or markers of gas exchange between patients given ketoconazole or placebo.44 This trial achieved plasma levels of ketoconazole higher than targeted previously but could not demonstrate a reduction in thromboxane production in vivo. The effect of decreasing thromboxane synthesis in ARDS is therefore still unknown. It is still possible that ketoconazole in surgical and trauma patients at risk of or with incipient pulmonary injury may be beneficial.
ANTIOXIDANTS
The damage caused by ROS to matrix and cellular proteins, lipids and nucleic acids and ROS mediated signalling contribute to the pathogenesis of ARDS. The thiol groups of glutathione concentrated in the lower respiratory tract normally provide physiological antioxidant protection. However, the concentration and activity of glutathione in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid of patients with ARDS is reduced. Intra-venous administration does not reliably raise glutathione levels, but glutathione synthesis is stimulated by N-acetylcysteine (NAC) and procysteine (L-2-oxothiazolidine-4-carboxylate). Administration of these precursors increases plasma, erythrocyte, neutrophil, and BAL fluid concentrations of glutathione in patients with ARDS, although a complete effect may require 10 days of treatment. Early results of NAC therapy were promising, but several trials have found no difference in mortality, length of ventilatory support, or improvement in oxygenation in patients with established ARDS, and a large, as yet unpublished, phase III trial of procysteine was stopped early because of concerns about mortality in the treatment arm of the study. Currently, there is little evidence that intravenous NAC or procysteine are of benefit to patients with ARDS.

Dietary antioxidants such as ascorbic acid, tocopherol, and flavonoids have ROS scavenging ability and the capacity to reduce oxidised antioxidants as well as binding ROS producing catalysts such as free iron. Although reports of a significant action of these supplements on pulmonary inflammation are lacking, they are already components of some “immunonutrition” preparations.

PHOSPHATIDIC ACID INHIBITION
Phosphatidic acids are liberated in response to inflammatory stimuli by lysophosphatidic acyl transferase and, like arachidonetic acid, are a source of inflammatory mediators. Pentoxifylline and its more potent metabolite lisofylline are lysophosphatidic acyl transferase inhibitors. These compounds reduce serum free fatty acids in humans and lower cytokine production, neutrophil activation, pulmonary neutrophil sequestration, and attenuate lung injury in animal models. However, a study of lisofylline in 235 patients with ALI and ARDS was stopped at the first interim analysis because the pre-specified level of improvement for the treatment arm of the trial was not achieved.

PHOSPHOLIPASE INHIBITION
The enzymes of the secretory phospholipase A₂ group are capable of releasing biologically active polyunsaturated lipids, including arachidonic acid, from cell membranes and circulating plasma lipoprotein complexes. The liberated free fatty acids and their metabolites, including prostaglandins and other eicosanoids, are proinflammatory and may contribute to the pathophysiology of the sepsis syndrome and multiple organ failure. Furthermore, secretory phospholipases have the capacity to damage type II alveolar cells directly and degrade surfactant. Raised secretory phospholipase A₂ activity is found in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid from patients with ARDS and correlates with the severity of lung injury as measured using the Murray lung injury score. Serum secretory phospholipase A₂ concentrations are elevated in patients with sepsis and correlate with the development of ARDS in patients with septic shock and trauma.

The positive effects of secretory phospholipase A₂ inhibition in animal models of sepsis and lung injury led to preliminary trials of two concentrations of a selective inhibitor of group IIa secretory phospholipase A₂, namely LY315920Na/S-5920, infused for 7 days in patients presenting within 36 hours with severe sepsis. In the phase II study the treatment group showed a non-significant reduction in the development of ARDS and time spent on the ventilator. The principal mortality benefit occurred in patients who received the drug within 18 hours of their first organ failure. Prospective trials are required to confirm that early administration of LY315920Na/S-5920 protects lung function and improves mortality in patients with severe sepsis.

CONCLUSION
Most pharmacological strategies used in ARDS have targeted the inflammatory response. Many agents not mentioned here—cytokine inhibitors, anti-inflammatory cytokines, anti-proteases, and anti-endothotoxins alone and in combination—are in the early phases of drug development. Between 18% and 41% of patients with sepsis will develop ARDS and post mortem examination reveals evidence of infection, particularly pneumonia, in almost all patients with ARDS. This overlap between sepsis and ARDS means that improvements in the treatment of sepsis may influence the incidence and outcome of ARDS. Large clinical trials of anti-inflammatory agents for sepsis such as ibuprofen, anti-endotoxin, and anti-tumour necrosis factor alpha antibodies have had no human impact on the mortality associated with ARDS so far. At the time of writing recombinant activated protein C has been shown to decrease the mortality of patients with sepsis and may improve the outlook of patients with sepsis induced ARDS.

If the future of ARDS treatment lies in improvements in the management of multiorgan failure, then the pharmacological approach to treating lung injury may change. Previous attempts at simply dampening or halting the whole acute inflammatory process may be replaced by targeted therapies directed at elements of the pathological process that produce specific clinical problems. For example, reducing pathological fibrosis may be possible when more is understood about the regulation of collagen turnover in the normal and injured lung. Similarly, the protection, stimulation or suppression of alveolar cell division, migration, and secretion may be possible. This may enhance the repair of the alveolar epithelial cell barrier, the clearance of intra-alveolar exudate, and the normal turnover and function of surfactant.

REFERENCES
Respiratory Management in Critical Care


11 Difficult weaning

J Goldstone

Difficulty in weaning from mechanical ventilation is associated with intrinsic lung disease and/or a prolonged critical illness. After critical illness the incidence of weaning failure varies with 20% of all admissions failing initial weaning.\(^1\)\(^2\) The incidence of weaning failure increases in patients who have been ventilated for many weeks but is low (<5%) in patients who undergo elective surgery such as after cardiopulmonary bypass.\(^3\) In a recent audit in our intensive care unit (ICU) of patients who had received mechanical ventilation for more than 72 hours, weaning was the dominant clinical problem during recovery and accounted for over half of the total time spent on the ICU. The mean number of weaning episodes was 5 per patient.

When assessing patients clinically, it is useful to determine whether the patient has yet to start weaning, is in the middle of a weaning attempt, is not yet ready to wean, or will never be able to wean. A simple assessment screen consisting of the concentration of inspired oxygen relative to the arterial oxygen tension, the level of positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP), the amount of sedation, and the inotropic requirements can be performed every day in patients receiving mechanical ventilation. The screen identifies patients who may be successfully weaned and reduces the number of patients receiving mechanical ventilation for more than 21 days.\(^4\) Furthermore, passing the screening test is associated with reduced in-hospital mortality.\(^1\) This chapter concentrates on patients who are difficult to wean from mechanical ventilation, many of whom will have made repeated attempts at weaning.

**PREDICTING THE LIKELY SUCCESS OF WEANING**

Although much has been written about the assessment of weaning, many studies do not set a numerical threshold for a score which is then tested prospectively. This important element of study design has resulted in many papers using retrospective analysis and may in part explain the variability of study results. For example, tachypnoea is an indicator of weaning failure in some studies\(^5\) but not in others.\(^6\)

Apart from study design, other influences are important when interpreting the ability of a test to predict weaning success. Tests should be standardized and reproducible.\(^7\) Although many tests are standardised in the laboratory or in normal subjects, few studies have been performed on standardisation of weaning parameters in the critically ill.\(^7\) Similarly, their reproducibility in the ICU environment is crucial. A further problem is that many studies have been performed on a heterogeneous group of patients.

**SIMPLE BEDSIDE TESTS**

Spirometric tests of lung function have been used frequently and are often quoted as predictors of weaning. Although early reports suggested that minute ventilation, maximal pressure generation, and the ability to increase minute ventilation (maximal voluntary ventilation) were useful, further studies have not reproduced these findings. Indeed, although some of the commonly used tests have high sensitivity, their specificity is often surprisingly low (table 11.1).

**Rapid shallow breathing**

A common finding in patients who fail to wean is the early development of rapid shallow breathing when the ventilator is disconnected.\(^7\) This represents the coordinated response of the patient to the ventilatory load applied. The attractive features of this assessment are that it tests the whole ventilatory system and requires that the patient be disconnected from the ventilator, thus indicating whether or not the patient can breathe in a controlled environment. Rapid shallow breathing (frequency divided by tidal volume, f/Vt) is best assessed with the patient breathing with continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) at the level of PEEP used during mechanical ventilation. Rapid shallow breathing has a sensitivity of 0.97 with a specificity of 0.64.\(^8\) Weaning parameters with a low specificity result in some patients, who are able to breathe independently, being prevented from weaning. By encouraging all patients to be disconnected from the ventilator this may in part be avoided.

**Combined tests**

Combining measurements may improve one's ability to predict weaning outcome. Sassoon and Mahutte\(^9\) repeated the analysis of rapid shallow breathing but combined it with the occlusion pressure in the first 100 ms (P\(_{0.1}\)), an index of central drive. At this early phase of respiration, where little length has changed, the pressure generated is related to the degree of stimulation to the respiratory muscles. Although the combination of f/Vt and P\(_{0.1}\) provided the most sensitive and specific predictor, receiver operator curve (ROC) analysis showed only a modest gain with the addition of P\(_{0.1}\).

**Table 11.1** Commonly quoted predictive variables of weaning\(^6\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Threshold value</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minute ventilation</td>
<td>15 l/min</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum inspiratory pressure</td>
<td>–15 cm H(_2)O</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>0.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidal volume</td>
<td>4 ml/kg</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Threshold value = value beyond which weaning is predicted to fail.
Normal subjects by taking maximum pressure measurements at the mouth (Pmax), while oesophageal and gastric balloon catheters allow the study of diaphragmatic strength. Contractions of the diaphragm can be obtained by electric or magnetic stimulation of the phrenic nerves. In the intubated patient maximum pressure generation can be assessed during occluded maximal manoeuvres and this can be simply performed as the endotracheal tube is easily accessible. Pmax was originally measured in intubated patients being weaned from mechanical ventilation by Sahn and Lakshminarayan. Patients with severe weakness (Pmax <20 cm H2O) were unable to wean. However, as a sole indicator of the ability to breathe spontaneously, muscle strength alone may not predict success or failure. Severely weak muscles can only sustain spontaneous breathing if all other factors are entirely normal.

The measurement of respiratory muscle strength on the ICU presents more challenges. Firstly, generating maximal pressure with an artificial airway leads to movement of the endotracheal tube which inhibits maximal pressure generation. Secondly, many patients cannot sustain the one second plateau pressure demanded by the original Pmax protocol. Lastly, few patients can coordinate respiration to ensure that they reach residual volume before maximum inspiratory effort.

In order to improve the ability of patients and normal subjects to perform a maximal inspiratory manoeuvre, brief inspiratory efforts were investigated during gasping against a closed airway with pressure measured in the endotracheal tube. Inspiration against an occluded airway is well tolerated by patients provided the technique is well explained and that the gasping does not continue for longer than 20 seconds. An advantage of the gasp is that maximal efforts build up over the 3–8 inspiratory efforts. This technique has been used to measure strength in patients who are not fully conscious, enabling a voluntary estimate to be made in a group of patients who were previously unable to comply with a volitional protocol.

When the reproducibility of the measurement of inspiratory strength was assessed in intubated patients, the between observer, within day, and between day variability of inspiratory muscle strength were very variable. The observation of a low (weak) inspiratory pressure has to be treated with caution. However, a strong effort is reassuring and unlikely to be an artifact. Finally, non-volitional magnetic stimulation of the diaphragm has been applied to the critically ill. This technique may enable studies to be performed that will address the time course and extent of respiratory and skeletal muscle weakness in critically ill patients.

Aetiology of respiratory muscle weakness in the critically ill
Although most patients are weak, the precise cause of weakness is not always known. Causes of acute weakness include electrolyte disturbances such as hypophosphataemia and hypomagnesaemia. Although electrolyte abnormalities are relatively common on the ICU, their significance in this context is unknown. Long term weakness may be due to critical illness itself. Disuse of skeletal muscles leads to atrophy, where the reduced cross section of the muscle decreases maximum tension. This process is rapid and 7–10 days of disuse may decrease maximum pressure generation by the diaphragm by 50%. Critical illnesses are commonly associated with a polyneuropathy, with or without a myopathy. Such patients may present with extreme weakness, mainly in the legs, and tetraplegia is possible.

If the muscles are weak, can we improve strength with exercise or training? Skeletal muscle responds to training regimens by increasing mass and cross sectional area. For a training regimen to be effective it must be controlled, such that the task is repetitive and supramaximal with periods of

![Figure 11.1](image-url) Key components of spontaneous breathing. Drive from the central nervous system acts on the peripheral respiratory muscles. The balance between the components can be disordered, leading to fatigue of the respiratory muscles, failure to generate force, and a decrease in alveolar ventilation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 11.2 The three determinants of ventilation and common pathophysiological conditions associated with failure to wean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Central drive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sedation, analgesia or anaesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Coma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Raised intracranial pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hypercapnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Respiratory muscle strength</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hypophosphataemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Disuse atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sepsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Polyneuropathy/myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Load applied to the muscles</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hyperinflation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Left ventricular failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Bronchospasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lung fibrosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

COMPONENTS OF WEANING FAILURE
Weaning from mechanical ventilation depends on the strength of the respiratory muscles, the load applied to the muscles, and the central drive (table 11.2). Respiratory failure may result from disorders in one of these three areas—for example, a myopathy reducing strength, acute bronchospasm suddenly increasing load, or opiates acting on the central nervous system. However, it is also possible that disorders of strength and load occur together.

The relationship between these three key components of spontaneous breathing may be visualised as a balance (fig 11.1). If the muscles are heavily loaded, spontaneous contractions of the diaphragm can be obtained to the critically ill. This technique may enable studies to be performed that will address the time course and extent of respiratory and skeletal muscle weakness in critically ill patients.

**COMPONENTS OF WEANING FAILURE**
Weaning from mechanical ventilation depends on the strength of the respiratory muscles, the load applied to the muscles, and the central drive (table 11.2). Respiratory failure may result from disorders in one of these three areas—for example, a myopathy reducing strength, acute bronchospasm suddenly increasing load, or opiates acting on the central nervous system. However, it is also possible that disorders of strength and load occur together.

The relationship between these three key components of spontaneous breathing may be visualised as a balance (fig 11.1). If the muscles are heavily loaded, spontaneous contractions of the diaphragm can be obtained to the critically ill. This technique may enable studies to be performed that will address the time course and extent of respiratory and skeletal muscle weakness in critically ill patients.

Although patients are weak, the precise cause of weakness is not always known. Causes of acute weakness include electrolyte disturbances such as hypophosphataemia and hypomagnesaemia. Although electrolyte abnormalities are relatively common on the ICU, their significance in this context is unknown. Long term weakness may be due to critical illness itself. Disuse of skeletal muscles leads to atrophy, where the reduced cross section of the muscle decreases maximum tension. This process is rapid and 7–10 days of disuse may decrease maximum pressure generation by the diaphragm by 50%. Critical illnesses are commonly associated with a polyneuropathy, with or without a myopathy. Such patients may present with extreme weakness, mainly in the legs, and tetraplegia is possible.

If the muscles are weak, can we improve strength with exercise or training? Skeletal muscle responds to training regimens by increasing mass and cross sectional area. For a training regimen to be effective it must be controlled, such that the task is repetitive and supramaximal with periods of...
rest between training exercises. In addition, strength training differs conceptually and in practice from endurance training. For the respiratory muscles, training is ill defined and although it is felt that the respiratory muscles should behave in a similar manner to other muscle groups, definitive studies have yet to show how they may be trained. It is likely that the response to training will in part be genetically determined. The general observation that some individuals are responsive to and have ability at certain types of exercise has led to studies showing genetic differences in the response to training according to genotype. A genetic polymorphism of the angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) gene has been described with a 256 base pair deletion or insertion, termed DD or II. In de-trained subjects there is an 11-fold difference between homozygous subgroups in response to performing a repetitive biceps exercise. Recently, respiratory muscle strength and endurance was studied in de-trained subjects who underwent general non-specific training. Respiratory muscle endurance was increased fivefold in the II subgroup.

Central nervous system drive
Although central respiratory drive is not often measured on the ICU, it is possible to measure $P_{0.1}$, an index of drive. $P_{0.1}$ is raised when respiratory drive is artificially increased during a hypercapnic challenge and is also high in patients suffering ventilatory failure. In intubated patients it is often the case that little or no gas flows in the early part of inspiration, if valves are required to open and the speed of response is slow. In such circumstances, patients may be making occluding breathing efforts and $P_{0.1}$ may be measured within the airway automatically by the ventilator.

Can $P_{0.1}$ be used to assess weaning from mechanical ventilation? It is easy to apply the technique to ventilated patients and, when respiratory drive is raised, the measured pressure exceeds 5.5 cm H$_2$O. A raised $P_{0.1}$ is associated with failure to wean. Interestingly, patients who are able to breathe during weaning trials not only have a low $P_{0.1}$ but are also able to increase drive and minute ventilation during a hypercapnic challenge.

Respiratory drive has been measured in patients receiving pressure support ventilation where the level of pressure support was decreased in stages. It would follow that, as the amount of support decreases, there will be a moment when drive to the muscles increases. In patients who were able to breathe spontaneously, the level of drive remained low. Conversely, in patients who fail to wean, drive increased, often above the level seen previously. It is possible that the level of ventilatory support could be titrated in this manner, keeping the level of drive within the “normal” range for patients on the ICU. A similar approach was used to adjust the level of external PEEP applied to patients with varying degrees of intrinsic PEEP. As the level of external PEEP increased, the ability of the patients to achieve gas flow reduced until the optimum balance of internal and external PEEP was reached (Fig 11.2). Respiratory drive increased if external PEEP achieved hyperinflation, enabling the adjustment of external PEEP to the correct level without requiring the difficult measurement of internal PEEP in the spontaneously breathing patient.

Load applied to the muscles
Work is performed when a force moves through a distance and is termed “external” as it may be easily measured. Internal work is performed when there is no movement, when the muscle contracts and produces tension and heat. To calculate external work in the respiratory system, the tidal volume must be integrated with respect to the transpleural pressure generated during the breath. This requires some measure of pleural pressure, usually obtained from oesophageal balloon catheters, and simultaneous measurement of volume at the mouth. Internal work can be imagined if there is no gas flow, as occurs in complete obstruction. In this circumstance, energy is dissipated against distortions of the chest wall and no ventilation occurs.

Work is often increased in weaning failure and successful weaning occurs when work is reduced. It is possible to monitor work continuously and, in those who fail to wean, pressure generation is significantly higher at the end of the weaning trial, inspiration as a fraction of the respiratory cycle lengths, and patients are tachypnoeic.

CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS
Exhaustive breathing may damage skeletal muscle fibres and cause a reduction in the ability to generate pressure. Indeed, in healthy volunteers the strength of the diaphragm as judged by magnetic twitch transdiaphragmatic pressure is substantially reduced up to 24 hours after breathing to exhaustion through an inspiratory resistance of 60% of maximal.

Figure 11.2 The threshold load effect of intrinsic or auto-positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP). When auto-PEEP is high, no gas flow will occur at the mouth until the pressure generated within the chest exceeds the level of intrinsic PEEP. (A) The pressure within the alveolus cannot fall to zero because of the obstruction to expiratory flow. The pressure to begin gas flow must be less than the level of intrinsic PEEP, in this case –16 cm H$_2$O. (B) External PEEP is applied, balancing the intrinsic PEEP. This has the effect of reducing the pressure required to begin inspiratory flow, in this case from –16 to –1 cm H$_2$O.
Failure to wean from mechanical ventilation does not exclusively affect respiratory muscle performance. The oxygen consumption of muscles can rise considerably and changes in gut mucosal pH indicate that an oxygen debt occurs during failed weaning attempts. More organ specific disorders occur when the level of respiratory work is high. In patients at risk of coronary artery disease, weaning precipitates ischaemia which may not be detected at the bedside, particularly if three lead ECG monitoring is used. Weaning is less likely to succeed if myocardial ischaemia occurs. Furthermore, mechanical ventilation supports left ventricular function in patients with incept heart failure. Hence, invasive haemodynamic measurements and radionuclide imaging in patients showed decreased left ventricular performance and oesophageal pressure, and a 2-3-fold increase in pulmonary artery occlusion pressure when weaning failed. Re-ventilation reverses this effect and subsequent treatment to support the myocardium led to successful weaning. Heart failure in patients who fail to disconnect from mechanical ventilation is an important differential diagnosis. Triggering mechanical ventilation is an important aspect of setting the ventilator when patients are breathing spontaneously. Triggering from the inspiratory flow reduces work involved in triggering compared with pressure triggering. If the trigger sensitivity is set inappropriately, it is difficult to breathe through the ventilator and, in weak patients, it is possible that no breath is delivered and desynchrony occurs. Improvements in trigger methodology have decreased inspiratory work, with flow triggering becoming the standard. In health, ventilators can now be set such that almost no work is performed to initiate a breath. Mechanical ventilation in severe lung disease is a greater challenge, especially in obstructive lung diseases where the transmission of the inspiratory effort to the upper airway may be delayed. When the time delay is prolonged, the ventilator senses inspiration at a point when the inspiratory muscles are contracting. Thus, persistent respiratory muscle contraction leads to occult internal work being performed. Instead of conventional triggering at the ventilator end of the airway, sensing inspiration at the distal tip of the endotracheal tube would avoid some of the time delay in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). Experimentally, it is possible to compare conventional triggering with triggering at the ventilator, and substantial reductions in the work can be achieved. It is possible to move the inspiratory trigger even closer to the respiratory muscles, offsetting the delay in triggering if pressure is sensed within the chest. Oesophageal triggering has recently been found to reduce total inspiratory work in normal volunteers.

**Recent Advances in Mechanical Ventilation**

**Proportional assist ventilation (PAV)**
A conventional ventilator has one variable that is determined by the user. For example, in the pressure control mode the airway pressure can be manipulated. During the breath the volume delivered to the patient depends on the mechanics of the lung and chest wall. With PAV the ventilator measures the compliance and resistance of the system during each breath. The ventilator can then be set to deliver the pressure required for a given tidal volume, or a proportion of it, depending on the gain of the system set by the operator. PAV can unload the respiratory muscles to a greater extent than other modes of ventilation. It can compensate for dynamic changes in resistance and compliance and allow the patient to vary tidal breathing, maintaining the amount of intrinsic muscle effort set by the operator. Similar technology can be applied to the work required to breathe through an endotracheal tube. By measuring the resistance and compliance of standard endotracheal tube, automatic tube compensation (the amount of assistance relative to the inspiratory flow rate) can be provided.

**Hyperinflation**
Expiratory flow limitation causes hyperinflation and increased resting end expiratory pressure. This is critical. Testing intrinsic PEEP and it acts as a load during inspiration as the patient must generate a negative pressure equal to the level of auto-PEEP in order to generate gas flow at the mouth that triggers inspiration. Asynchrony with the ventilator may be caused by excessive auto-PEEP and may be resolved by matching the external applied PEEP to balance the system. In normal subjects, such a load would be easily borne. For example, an average level of intrinsic PEEP of 11 cm H2O is a small fraction of the total pressure generating ability. However, many intubated patients generate a maximum of 30 cm H2O. In this context, overcoming the threshold load effect of intrinsic PEEP uses 33% of available pressure generation and may contribute to fatigue.

**Techniques of weaning**
Important studies in the 1990s established that the mode of ventilation has a major influence on the success of weaning. Brochard et al compared weaning by pressure support (PS), T-piece trials, and synchronised intermittent mandatory ventilation (SIMV) in a group of patients who had failed to wean and in whom it was predicted that weaning would be problematic. Over a period of 28 days SIMV was clearly inferior to the other techniques, with an advantage in favour of the PS group. This study also emphasised the importance of a weaning protocol. The Spanish Lung Failure Collaborative Group reported contrasting findings. While SIMV was clearly less favourable, T-piece weaning was advantageous overall. Although both studies showed that SIMV was disadvantageous, the explanation for the differing findings between PS and T-piece weaning may relate to differences in study design. For example, the duration of mechanical ventilation was different between the two studies, with fewer longer term patients in the Spanish study.

**Non-invasive ventilation (NIV)**
NIV has several advantageous features for weaning patients, including the absence of sedative drugs, early removal of the endotracheal tube, a decrease in ventilator associated pneumonia, and better compliance with chest physiotherapy. These advantages have seldom been studied in a controlled manner and to date the majority of studies have been performed in patients with chronic respiratory failure in an effort to avoid endotracheal intubation.

In 22 patients referred to a specialist chronic ventilation unit for weaning from mechanical ventilation, NIV was rapidly tolerated in 20 and many were extubated quickly. Ten patients required nasal ventilation at night when discharged home. Although this study was not controlled, it certainly shows that patients who are difficult to wean can be extubated and may be managed in a high dependency area using NIV support.

**Psychological support**
Psychological disturbance occurs during weaning trials and feelings of hopelessness affect performance. Clinically, there appears to be a gap between the physiological testing performed at the bedside and the actual performance of the patient, some of which may be attributable to other factors including personality, fear, agitation, depression, and empowerment. Weaning is associated with depression and treatment may be helpful. An important element of the care of patients during weaning is to devise methods of psychological support. One example is to ask the patient to imagine a particularly strong memory and during weaning to allay anxiety and increase tolerance of reductions in ventilatory support.
Specialist weaning units

The demand for ICU beds has led to the development of facilities specializing in weaning. Weaning units admit patients with single organ failure who do not require complex organ support. Such units are more cost-effective, with dramatic reductions in both the fixed overheads and the consumable cost associated with weaning. Moreover, by concentrating effort in a specialist area and through the development of protocols to guide the weaning effort, it is possible to decrease the time spent on mechanical ventilation.  

REPRESENTATIVE REFERENCES


A C Davidson

Acute episodes of respiratory failure in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) account for 5–10% of emergency medical admissions to hospital and failure of first line treatment is a common reason for referral to the intensive care unit (ICU). In recent years such patients have become better characterised and the driving force in this has been the need to define those suitable for treatment by non-invasive ventilation (NIV) rather than intubation. Bacterial infection has traditionally been considered aetiologically dominant but its importance has been over stressed. Heart failure, cardiac arrhythmia, pulmonary embolism, and “uncertain causes” are common. Acute deterioration precipitated by viral infection is increasingly recognised. Consideration of all the ways in which the co-morbidity of COPD influences ICU management is beyond the scope of this chapter. Its presence affects both ventilator strategy and the outcome of patients after elective or emergency surgery. COPD also contributes to delay in the weaning of patients from mechanical ventilation. This chapter focuses on the common problem of the patient with respiratory failure arising from an exacerbation of chronic airflow obstruction.

In the past the perception that survival of patients with COPD was poor, especially long term, combined with insufficient provision of critical care facilities in the UK has limited access to the ICU. This was especially so when “end stage” COPD was considered to be present. This might be inferred if there is no apparent precipitating cause such as pneumonia or pneumothorax. In these circumstances, as there is no apparent reversible cause, it could be argued that recovery is unlikely. Survival following mechanical ventilation (MV) is, however, better in the absence of a major precipitating cause. This apparent paradox probably arises because patients who require a longer period of ventilatory support—which will be the case if, for instance, pneumonia is present—are exposed to the secondary complications of ICU admission. Just as survival in the acute respiratory distress syndrome is more closely related to associated multi-organ failure or nosocomial infection than to the severity of the initial lung injury, so the complications that arise during the ICU stay of a patient with COPD may have a greater influence on outcome than the severity of airflow obstruction. Nevertheless, age, severity of airflow obstruction, co-morbidity, and general pre-admission health status are important in determining survival.

There are national and international differences in both the institution and withdrawal of MV in COPD. The prevalence of COPD in the community and admission practices will determine how costly ICU management of COPD will be locally. For instance, in one patient simulation study there was considerable variation in prognostic estimates by respondents for identical clinical scenarios. The prognosis predicted markedly affected willingness to offer hypothetical ICU admission and the estimates were uniformly worse than US outcome prediction data would suggest. In one UK report withdrawal of treatment was the most common cause of death, while in an Italian study two thirds of patients were still being actively weaned 60 days after admission. The European Human Rights Act might increase the pressure to admit patients to the ICU and there is some evidence that this is occurring. This is probably desirable in the UK where, in the past, respiratory physicians may not have sufficiently championed the cause of the patient with COPD. Short term survival following invasive MV can be expected in 63–86%, a figure well above that for unplanned medical admissions. Although long term survival is less good—in one study 52%, 42%, and 37% at 1, 2 and 3 years, respectively—this is similar to survival following myocardial infarction when left ventricular dysfunction is present. A better long term outcome is reported following an episode of respiratory failure managed with NIV. It is also possible that survival may subsequently be improved by domiciliary NIV in selected patients, although interim results of controlled trials of domiciliary ventilation have been negative.

Despite reasonable survival to hospital discharge, the decision to admit to the ICU in advanced cases is frequently difficult and involves balancing health status with an estimate of expectation of survival and quality of life issues. This often needs to be established on the basis of scant information and in the face of sometimes unreasonable expectations from distraught relatives. Furthermore, these difficult decisions commonly fall on the least experienced doctors as hospital presentation is often “out of hours”. A recent report found that co-morbidity, need for MV beyond 72 hours, and failure following extubation were strong predictors of a poor outcome. Survival to discharge for the whole group (166 patients) was 72% and increased to 88% in those without co-morbidity. This report therefore suggests that an active policy, with early review once MV has been initiated, may be appropriate. Ideally, the value and complications of MV should be discussed prior to the medical emergency. Such discussion may be difficult to initiate in the outpatient clinic and primary care is probably a better setting. The recovery period following a period of MV is an ideal opportunity and it is well suited for inclusion in rehabilitation programmes, but resistance to such discussion is common, at least in the UK.
Box 12.1 Mechanisms involved in decompensated COPD

- Increased resistive load
- Widespread airflow obstruction
- Decreased respiratory system compliance
- High lung volume
- Dynamic hyperinflation
- Shortened expiratory time
- Poorly emptying lung units
- Reduced power of respiratory pump
- Impaired mechanical efficiency
- Effects of acidosis and hypoxemia
- Impaired drive
- Sleep deprivation
- CO₂ narcosis

Box 12.2 Contraindications to NIV

- Impaired consciousness (except O₂ induced)
- Uncooperative patient
- Significant vomiting risk
- Cardiac arrhythmia or hypotension (if severe)
- Profound hypoxaemia (unless in ICU)
- Excessive secretions

RECOGNISING THE NEED FOR VENTILATORY SUPPORT

The recognition that MV is required is commonly an “end of the bed” assessment by an experienced clinician. No one clinical feature or investigation is absolute except respiratory arrest or loss of consciousness. In most cases failure to improve with medical treatment in the hours following admission triggers ICU referral. Late failure several days after admission to hospital is less common and may indicate a worse prognosis. In many, a downward spiral of increasing carbon dioxide retention and sleep deprivation eventually leads to impaired consciousness as the ventilatory pump fails to cope with the increased respiratory “load”. The mechanisms involved in decompensated COPD (box 12.1) are an increase in airflow resistance related to widespread bronchial wall inflammation and progressive dynamic hyperinflation that maximises expiratory flow at the cost of increasing inspiratory muscle work.

In addition to this resistive work, reduced respiratory system compliance associated with operating towards the top of the pressure-volume curve is combined with decreased mechanical efficiency of the diaphragm at high lung volumes. Premature expiratory closure of small airways, either because of lack of support in emphysema or functional narrowing from airway inflammation or smooth muscle contraction, results in impaired gas exchange. Positive end expiratory intrathoracic pressure—so called intrinsic PEEP—further loads the inspiratory muscles. Recruitment of abdominal muscles during expiration is common. This may not increase expiratory airflow as dynamic expiratory resistance, the choke effect, may occur and will then only accentuate gas trapping. Sudden relaxation of abdominal muscle contraction at end expiration, a feature of the failing patient, may be employed to unload the inspiratory muscles by natural recoil at the start of inspiration. Additionally, as respiratory rate increases, gas exchange is further impaired by increased dead space ventilation and further muscle loading is the result of additional dynamic hyperinflation as expiratory time shortens. Increased pulmonary vascular resistance and reduced venous return impair right heart function and decrease cardiac output. Inadequate systemic oxygen delivery to meet energy requirements then adds a metabolic component to the respiratory acidosis. Hypoxaemia and acidosis further impair respiratory muscle function. Unless controlled oxygen therapy, bronchodilators, and fluid replacement can both improve gas exchange and reduce the load on the respiratory muscles, mechanical ventilatory support will be required.

At what stage in this process should intervention occur and how can this state be recognised? The need for MV is better predicted by arterial pH and carbon dioxide (Paco₂) levels than the degree of hypoxaemia. For instance, in a study investigating the value of NIV in acute COPD, 74% of patients randomised to management without NIV (mean pH 7.26) reached the a priori criteria for tracheal intubation. The use of uncontrolled oxygen therapy may have precipitated further deterioration in this study, resulting in a high frequency of ventilatory support. In a similar study which included less severely affected patients, 27% of patients with a ward admission pH of 7.25–7.35 progressed to fulfil intubation criteria compared with 36% of those with a pH of <7.25. Soo Hoo et al found a higher overall need for intubation at 54% with a 70% risk in those with an initial pH <7.2. Subsequent multivariate analysis from the study by Plant et al reveals that both pH and Paco₂ levels contribute to risk, although the sensitivity and specificity of these factors alone do not allow sufficiently accurate prediction on an individual basis. For instance, the odds ratio for reaching intubation criteria for a patient with an arterial pH of 7.30 and Paco₂ 8 kPa was 3.84 compared with 16.8 for pH 7.25 and Paco₂ 10 kPa. Data from this study also showed that pH often improves between arrival in the emergency department and ward admission with conventional non-ventilator management. Accordingly, in the absence of a clear need for tracheal intubation such as a Glasgow coma score of <8 or respiratory rate >40 or <10, conservative therapy or the use of NIV may be used initially. Usually, it is the failure to improve that signals the need for assisted ventilation.

MODES OF VENTILATORY SUPPORT

Non-invasive ventilation

Several studies have demonstrated the superiority of NIV over tracheal intubation and MV in acute COPD. NIV is indicated after initial treatment if the pH remains <7.30 and after exclusion of reversible precipitating causes such as a pneumothorax, the depressant effect of uncontrolled oxygen therapy, or the excessive use of sedatives. Depending on the circumstances, NIV may be delivered either in the admissions ward, HDU, or the respiratory ward. Generally accepted exclusions to the use of NIV (box 12.2) are impaired consciousness (with uncontrolled oxygen therapy as an exception), vomiting, cardiovascular compromise, and the uncooperative patient.

The benefit of NIV in patients with more profound acidosis (pH <7.25) is unclear. In such patients NIV should, ideally, only be used in the ICU so that tracheal intubation can be rapidly performed. The decision about the appropriateness of resuscitation, which necessarily includes intubation, should be made at the start of ventilatory support. In some patients NIV may be the “ceiling” of therapy, depending on comorbidity, the presence of reversible factors, and consideration of health status or advance directives. It should be remembered that NIV fails in up to 30% of patients, with a significant proportion being late failures. Failure with NIV may result from a number of causes including patient intolerance because there is inadequate offloading of the respiratory muscles. This may arise when there is a failure of triggering with the spontaneous mode of ventilatory support. Alternatively, there may be inadequate augmentation of tidal volume because of insufficient pressure, auto triggering arising from excessive tidal trigger sensitivity with bi-level ventilators, or machine delivered breaths that are not synchronised with glottic opening. In the patient naïve to NIV, a full face mask is...
reviews and comprehensive guidelines for NIV are will hopefully be effectively used outside the ICU. Excellent equipment and the necessary skill mix of staff required, NIV tion of the value of NIV in such patients, greater availability of cricoid pressure in preventing aspiration agents such as rocuronium. Doubts about the effectiveness of have led to the increased use of short acting non-depolarising to intubate. Concerns about hyperkalaemic cardiac arrest its short effect makes it safer in the event of a failure suxamethonium is classically used for muscle relaxa- ration pre-oxygenation is essential. Intubation with the rapid intrathoracic pressure, and direct vasodilation and reduced hypotension, or an altered mental state. Immediate intubation Impending cardiorespiratory arrest is indicated by profound Tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation Monitoring the impact of NIV is essential. A greater expansion of the chest during assisted breathing should be the primary aim with good matching of the patient’s breathing effort with the ventilator or effective ventilation with machine timed breaths. Whichsoever mode is employed, a reduction in respira- tory distress is an important prognostic feature and both cardiac and respiratory rate will fall with a gradual reversal of respiratory acidosis when NIV is effective. In our experience the need for frequent arterial blood gas analysis and appropri- ate monitoring of physiological variables is best provided in the HDU or level 2 facility. In some hospitals, where specialist medical wards are available, NIV may be provided in level 1 beds. This is particularly the case when used in patients with less physiological disturbance such as a higher pH, using spontaneous mode only ventilators. With increased recogni- tion of the value of NIV in such patients, greater availability of equipment and the necessary skill mix of staff required, NIV will hopefully be effectively used outside the ICU. Excellent reviews and comprehensive guidelines for NIV are available.

Tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation Impending cardiorespiratory arrest is induced by profound hypoxaemia on disconnection from oxygen or NIV, significant hypotension, or an altered mental state. Immediate intubation may then be required. As cardiovascular collapse is common after intubation, transfer of the spontaneously breathing patient to the ICU may, however, be safer. Collapse arises from a combination of reduced venous return secondary to positive intrathoracic pressure, and direct vasodilation and reduced sympathetic tone induced by sedative agents. Before intuba- tion pre-oxygenation is essential. Intubation with the rapid sequence induction and cricoid pressure to reduce the risk of aspiration should ideally be performed by an experienced cli- nician. Suxamethonium is classically used for muscle relaxa- tion as its short effect makes it safer in the event of a failure to intubate. Concerns about hyperkalaemic cardiac arrest have led to the increased use of short acting non-depolarising agents such as rocuronium. Doubts about the effectiveness of cricoid pressure in preventing aspiration have also resulted in a move to “stand up” intubation. This is a high risk period in which profound hypotension may result in cardiac arrhythmia or arrest. Unless hypotension resolves rapidly with fluid replacement, cardiac tamponade induced by hyper- inflation (bagging) should be suspected. In these circum- stances, temporary disconnection of the endotracheal tube from positive pressure will lead to a return in cardiac output.

Controlled mechanical ventilation Having secured the airway and corrected hypoxaemia, management is aimed at correcting the respiratory acidosis while avoiding further hyperinflation. This is best achieved by a combination of slow MV with a prolonged expiratory time and a limited tidal volume. A degree of permissive hypercapnia is well tolerated, while bronchial toilet and bronchodilatation—usually with a combination of intravenous and nebulised agents—will improve alveolar ventilation. The benefit of steroids has been established in acute COPD, but these probably take hours to effect an improvement. Inotropes such as epinephrine (adrenaline) are well known to cause a metabolic acidosis but this may also occur with β, stimulants, largely by stimulating metabolism. In the first 12–24 hours of MV, paralysis is normally required. This reduces the chest and abdominal wall contributions to the reduced respiratory system compliance and prevents patient ventilator dysyn- chrony or fighting, which will impair alveolar ventilation and result in high airway pressures. Airflow resistance and hyper- inflation both contribute to the need for high inflation pressures to achieve an effective tidal volume and these may progressively increase if the set ventilatory parameters are causing further hyperinflation (see fig 12.1). The immediate complications of high airway pressures are impaired cardiac output, pneumothorax, and mediastinal and subcutaneous emphysema. The ventilator may be set either to control volume or pressure. In volume controlled ventilation, conventional settings would be a tidal volume of 8–12 ml/kg at a frequency of 10–14 breaths/minute and an inspiratory/expiratory (I: E) ratio of 1:2.5 or 3.0. The disadvantage of volume control is the poten- tial for high airway pressures; pressure limitation provides protection and is available on most modern machines. Alternatively, pressure controlled ventilation may be preferred as high airway pressures are avoided and the inspiratory flow pattern, which better resembles normal breathing, tends to equalise ventilation between lung units rather than preferen- tially ventilating, and possibly overinflating, the less ob- structed (or faster filling and emptying) lung units (fig 12.2). This mode of ventilation has gained favour as it has become recognised that additional lung injury may result from relatively high tidal volumes that accompany the use of high ventilatory pressures rather than from high airway pressure per se. Although the importance of this concept has so far only been demonstrated in ARDS where a reduced mortality accompanies limited tidal volume ventilation, the same mechanisms probably operate in other indications for MV. The use of PEEP when ventilating patients with airflow obstruction is controversial. It was argued that externally applied positive airway pressure (PEEP) would be harmful as it would increase hyperinflation. When small airway collapse develops during expiration from the structural changes asso- ciated with emphysema, the application of PEEP would reduce gas trapping by stenting open the airways. The value of PEEP to offset intrinsic PEEP is also important when supporting spontaneous breathing and is considered below. In controlled ventilation, a practical method to judge its use is to monitor tidal volume and airway pressure (PEEPi). As PEEP is applied, tidal volume will increase without an increase in air- way pressure until PEEPi exceeds PEEPi . Intrinsic PEEP can be measured by measuring plateau pressure following a prolonged expiratory pause, so called static PEEPi (see fig 12.3). Intrinsic PEEP will, however, be overestimated if there is active abdominal expiratory effort. Accurate measurement of dynamic PEEP (PEEP dyn) in spontaneously breathing
patients is more difficult and requires simultaneous measurement of gastric pressure (Pga) when PEEPi = PEEPi dyn – Pga.

**Assisted modes of ventilatory support**

In many patients correction of acidosis and the need for a high inspired oxygen concentration (FiO2) rapidly resolves. Spontaneous breathing may still be inadequate but partial ventilatory support is possible with synchronised intermittent mandatory ventilation (SIMV). It provides a background of machine delivered breaths whilst spontaneous breathing effort is enhanced by positive pressure (pressure support) acting to increase the tidal volume of such triggered breaths. These breaths then delay the next machine delivered breath (synchronisation). It would seem an attractive mode during the weaning period. Excessive amounts of respiratory work may, however, occur with SIMV unless attention is paid to optimise triggering by adjustment of PEEPe, and to titrate the degree of pressure support. At this point, knowing the level of PEEPi is useful but more difficult to measure.\(^\text{39}\) By adjusting PEEPe to approximate PEEPi, the inspiratory pressure required to trigger a breath can be reduced (gas flow cannot begin until a negative deflection in airway pressure is registered by the ventilator). Flow triggers are more sensitive than pressure triggers but are only available on newer ventilators. A bias flow, usually 1–5 l/min, is provided by the ventilator during expiration. When the flow signal changes with the onset of inspiration, the ventilator is triggered to deliver pressure support.

An additional cause of patient distress may, however, occur before the ventilator begins to provide flow. If the inspiratory flow rate, which commonly has a default setting of 60–80 l/min, is insufficient for patient demand (which may be up to 120 l/min), a sense of “air hunger” occurs which may result in premature cessation of inspiratory effort. On the other hand, if the mandatory machine delivered breaths are too large or too long, expiratory effort will occur before the end of inspiration and result in unnecessary work and patient distress. This phenomenon also occurs if the level of support is excessive (to ensure a “normal” tidal volume). Disentangling the primary problem leading to patient-ventilator dysynchrony versus more straightforward causes such as the discomfort of the endotracheal tube or anxiety may be difficult.\(^\text{40}\) Accordingly, accepting a high respiratory rate and small tidal volume with pressure support may be preferable to SIMV. With either mode, examination of the real time pressure and volume traces, available on modern ventilators, will provide clues to the setting of PEEPe, the presence of inspiratory effort that fails to produce triggering or of expiratory effort before the end of inspiration. Occasionally, however, direct measurement of the oesophageal or gastric pressure is necessary.

One disadvantage of pressure support occurs during sleep when prolonged apnoeic periods, potentiated by lowering Paco2 below normal, may result in repeated ventilator alarms. It is our preference to ensure adequate ventilatory support and allow restorative sleep at night using a controlled mode and then progressively reduce the degree of pressure support during the day. An alternative is to use timed bi-level pressure support\(^\text{41}\) which ensures adequate ventilation during sleep and, if adjusted appropriately, comfortable pressure support by day. As this method does not involve triggered breathing (it can be conceptualised as CPAP with a timed higher pressure period superimposed), inadvertent triggering during suctioning or coughing is avoided—a further mechanism for patients becoming distressed. With bi-level pressure support (BiPAP) there is the potential for increasing hyperinflation if inappropriate timing results in expiratory effort during the high pressure period.

Although conventional extubation criteria\(^\text{42}\) such as an FiO2 of <0.4 and tidal volume >10 ml/kg can be encountered soon after admission to the ICU, up to 30% of patients with COPD meeting such criteria fail in the period following extubation.\(^\text{43}\) A significant delay in the weaning process or failure following extubation may result from airflow obstruction, continued hypersecretion, impaired left ventricular function, or over-sedation.\(^\text{44}\) Propofol, a short acting sedative, may allow good titration of sedation in the period leading up to extubation and permit good synchrony between patient and

---

**Figure 12.2** Improved distribution of ventilation with pressure controlled mandatory ventilation.

**Figure 12.3** Measurement of intrinsic positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP). (A) Tracheal end expiratory pressure is low with open expiratory port. (B) Measurement of auto-PEEP or intrinsic PEEP by occlusion of expiratory port at end expiration. The balloon represents the ventilated lung with expiratory flow obstruction. Intrinsic PEEP will be overestimated if there is active abdominal muscle contraction.

---

Critical care management of respiratory failure resulting from COPD 83
ventilator, an essential requirement when deciding upon the likelihood of successful extubation. Nava et al.\(^1\) have provided evidence that early extubation is possible in patients who would be at high risk of post extubation failure by using IV as a bridge. Although another study was unable to confirm more successful weaning with this approach, the use of NIV had some benefits.\(^2\) It is our practice to aim for extubation at the 48–72 hours “window of opportunity” before secondary infections or other complications occur. Should this then fail, especially if stridor from glottic or supraglottic oedema is present after extubation, we proceed immediately to percutaneous tracheostomy on days 3–4 (see below).

**NON-VENTILATORY CONSIDERATIONS**

Steroids are useful in speeding the resolution of airway inflammation but are implicated in the myopathy associated with critical illness\(^3\) and our practice is to taper the dose rapidly. The value of nebulised steroids has not been established in this situation. Adequate nutritional support is essential but should not be excessive. There is no convincing evidence that manipulation of the metabolic costs of feeding by energy substrates has any influence on the outcome of mechanical ventilation. There is no evidence that percutaneous tracheostomy on days 3–4 (see below).

Infections or other complications occur. Should this then fail, non-invasive ventilation provides an alternative means of weaning. Fenestrated tracheostomy tubes will provide access to the tracheostomy being performed earlier in the clinical course. It allows intermittent ventilatory support and access to the lower respiratory tract for suctioning when ventilatory support is no longer required. A further advantage is that rehabilitation can be more active without the risk of inadvertent extubation. Fenestrated tracheostomy tubes will provide phonation, which improves communication and is an important milestone when weaning. One-way speaking valves (Paso-Safe) provide an even better voice and can be inserted into the single lumen ventilation circuits employed with bi-level ventilators when used to support patients during the weaning process.

**WEANING FAILURE**

This aspect of management is considered in the chapter in *Goldstone. Weaning protocols*\(^4\) may be helpful, principally by identifying patients who no longer require ventilatory support. COPD accounts for approximately 25% of weaning failures, defined as those still ventilator dependent 3 weeks or more after recovery from the condition precipitating ICU admission.\(^5\) The negative aspects of a continued stay in the modern ICU environment, especially when only single organ (respiratory) failure persists, justifies considering referral to specialist weaning centres\(^6\) which may be regionally provided in the future. On the other hand, sensitivity to the wishes of patients and/or judicious withholding of an escalation in therapy when deterioration occurs is also good practice in the irreversibly ventilator dependent patient.\(^7\)

**REFERENCES**


M ost asthma exacerbations are managed in the community or emergency department while the more severe cases that fail to respond to bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory therapy require admission to high dependency (HDU) or intensive care units (ICU).

Worldwide asthma prevalence is increasing, and with that the total number of admissions to hospital and intensive care. Although the time between the onset of symptoms and the requirement for ventilation is becoming shorter, the outcome is improving with fewer deaths and lower complication rates.

MORTALITY

A history of mechanical ventilation or ICU admission is a well-documented indicator of subsequent near fatal asthma. Women and smokers are also over-represented in both life threatening attacks and asthma deaths. It is believed that patients who have had a life threatening attack and those who die are from a similar demographic group. In a large study of patients admitted with a near fatal episode, two thirds of subsequent severe attacks or deaths had occurred within a year. Interestingly, the association between asthma deaths and β agonist use is still debated and there has been concern that the use of long acting β agonists may increase asthma mortality. This has not been confirmed in studies monitoring their use. In contrast, there is a consensus that underuse of anti-inflammatory treatment in the period leading up to the acute severe attack worsens prognosis.

Unfortunately, a proportion of asthmatic patients die despite reaching hospital alive. Such deaths can usually be attributed either to inadequate observation or treatment. Sadly, a number of patients suffer unobserved respiratory failure that progresses to cardiac arrest and those who die are from a similar demographic group. In a large study of patients admitted with a near fatal episode, two thirds of subsequent severe attacks or deaths had occurred within a year. Interestingly, the association between asthma deaths and β agonist use is still debated and there has been concern that the use of long acting β agonists may increase asthma mortality. This has not been confirmed in studies monitoring their use. In contrast, there is a consensus that underuse of anti-inflammatory treatment in the period leading up to the acute severe attack worsens prognosis.

Patients who fail to improve with optimal medical treatment in the emergency department should be considered for ICU admission to facilitate continuous monitoring of physiological parameters such as pulse oximetry, ECG, and arterial and central venous pressure. Equipment and experienced staff are also available for urgent procedures such as endotracheal intubation or the insertion of thoracostomy tubes.

Clinical, physiological and laboratory assessment

The immediate assessment of patients with asthma should include the degree of respiratory distress (ability to speak, respiratory rate, use of accessory muscles, air entry), degree of hypoxia (cyanosis, pulse oximetry, level of consciousness), and cardiovascular stability (arrhythmias, blood pressure). Accessory muscle use, wheeze, paradox, and tachypnoea may diminish as the patient tires.

Forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV1) and peak expiratory flow rate are the most used and convenient measures of airflow obstruction that support clinical findings and quantify the response to treatment. Occasionally patients are too distressed to perform forced expiratory manoeuvres or there is a risk of precipitating further bronchoconstriction. Expiratory airflow limitation results in a dynamic increase in end expiratory lung volume which interferes with inspiratory muscle function, both of the diaphragm and the chest wall. The positive alveolar pressure at end expiration (PEEP) due to residual elastic recoil has been termed intrinsic (PEEPi) and its presence is suggested by residual expiratory flow at the onset of inspiration. In spontaneously breathing patients the magnitude of PEEPi can be estimated by the change in intrapleural pressure (usually measured by an oesophageal pressure probe) between the onset of inspiratory effort and the onset of inspiratory flow (fig 13.2). The work of breathing is increased in the presence of PEEPi because the residual alveolar pressure must be overcome by muscle effort before inspiratory flow commences. Many patients also use expiratory muscles to aid expiration, which may paradoxically worsen dynamic airway collapse and PEEPi. Inspiratory muscle activity may also persist during expiration, which contributes to increased expiratory work of breathing. In mechanically ventilated paralysed patients the magnitude of PEEPi is estimated by performing an end expiratory breath hold and measuring the airway pressure with reference to that of the atmosphere. In the presence of PEEPi a short expiratory time may lead to “breath stacking” and progressive hyperinflation as the next breath is initiated before the previous tidal volume has been completely exhaled. The pathological effects of PEEPi include hypotension due to reduced venous return and an increased risk of pneumothorax.
Pulse oximetry is an invaluable adjunct to monitoring since the avoidance or abolition of hypoxia is a prime goal of treatment. Regular arterial blood gas measurements provide a measure of gas exchange and facilitate the monitoring of serum potassium levels. The arterial carbon dioxide tension (PaCO₂) and acid-base status help to identify the presence of pre-existing respiratory or metabolic acidosis, and the trend in PaCO₂ is helpful when assessing the response to treatment. The degree of hypokalaemia and lactic acidosis may also guide treatment. A chest radiograph is indicated to identify pneumothorax, areas of segmental or lobar collapse, or infiltrates that may suggest pneumonia. However, the yield is low. An ECG may detect myocardial ischaemia or identify arrhythmias, especially in older patients. Right axis deviation and right heart strain are common findings. Potassium, magnesium, calcium and phosphate deficiencies should be corrected to reduce the risk of arrhythmia and respiratory muscle weakness.

There are other causes of wheeze and respiratory distress that must be considered in the differential diagnosis. These include left ventricular failure, upper airway obstruction, inhaled foreign body, and aspiration of stomach contents.

Treatment

Intensive care treatment of the poorly responsive asthmatic patient should include high concentrations of inspired oxygen, continuous nebulisation of β agonists, intravenous corticosteroids, and respiratory support. Clinicians must be aware of the need to optimise oxygenation and avoid dehydration and hypokalaemia. Unrestricted high concentrations of oxygen (60–100%) must be administered to abolish hypoxaemia, unlike the patient with chronic obstructive lung disease where controlled limited oxygen is indicated.

Hypokalaemia is common and may be exaggerated by fluid resuscitation and the administration of β agonist bronchodilators. Repeated infusions of potassium chloride may be required with careful monitoring of serum levels and continuous ECG monitoring.

Specific asthma drug treatment

On admission to the ICU there should be a rapid review of earlier asthma treatment to identify elements that can be intensified or deficiencies remedied. Drugs contraindicated in asthma include β blockers, aspirin, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, and adenosine.

Corticosteroids

Evidence continues to accumulate that early treatment with adequate doses of corticosteroids improves outcome in severe acute asthma. There does not appear to be any benefit from high doses of hydrocortisone exceeding 400 mg/day, and no particular advantage of the intravenous over the oral route provided there is reliable gastrointestinal absorption. Inhaled corticosteroids have not been fully evaluated in this setting.

β agonists

Salbutamol (albuterol in North America) is the most commonly prescribed β agonist for the treatment of acute asthma. It appears to be more effective and induces less hypokalaemia when delivered by the inhaled route, although there is a theoretical rationale for administering salbutamol intravenously to bypass obstructed airways. Concerns over blood levels and potential cardiotoxicity may inhibit more aggressive use of nebulised salbutamol. However, continuous administration of nebulised salbutamol in doses approaching 20 mg/h can achieve bronchodilation without toxicity; indeed, the patient’s heart rate may fall with alleviation of airway obstruction.

Interpretation of the literature on continuous nebulised salbutamol is hampered by differences in the definitions of “continuous” (length of time) and the delivered doses used in individual studies. One study compared 27.5 mg salbutamol by either continuous or intermittent nebulisation over 6 hours and, not surprisingly, showed little difference between intermittent and continuous regimens. Another study suggested benefit from prolonged continuous aerosol use only in severe asthma. Doses of 0.3 mg/kg/h nebulised salbutamol have been safely used in children without significant...
toxicity. Higher inhaled doses may be required in mechanically ventilated patients due to aerosol losses in the ventilator circuit.

Salbutamol delivered by metered dose inhaler (MDI) with a spacer device is at least as effective as nebulised drug in the management of acute asthma in the emergency department. In patients with hypoxia and respiratory distress, however, nebulised drugs may be easier to administer. Even intranasal and intratracheal instillation of β agonists may be effective in an emergency situation. 8 Salbutamol is currently a racemic mixture of R and L forms. The S-enantiomer does not have β agonist effects and competes for the binding sites of the R form, levosalbutamol. 9 Formulations of levosalbutamol have fewer side effects and greater efficacy than the racemic mixture, suggesting that it may be preferable in acute severe asthma. 10 Terbutaline is an alternative β agonist that has been less widely studied but is effective by the inhaled, intravenous, and subcutaneous routes. Long acting β agonists such as salmeterol and eformoterol are not recommended because of their slow onset of action. Both nebulised and intravenous adrenaline (epinephrine) are effective in the treatment of acute asthma. The putative benefits of the α-adrenergic component of adrenaline include reduced microvascular permeability and airway wall oedema, and less impairment of ventilation/perfusion matching than with more selective β agonists. 11 However, there does not appear to be any clinical benefit over β agonists such as salbutamol. 12

Some of the metabolic and cardiovascular complications of acute severe asthma may be exacerbated by high dose β agonist therapy. Lactic acidosis as a result of parenteral β agonist use, anaerobic metabolism due to high work of breathing, tissue hypoxia, intracellular alkalosis, and reduced lactate clearance due to liver congestion all contribute to the complex metabolic disturbances of acute severe asthma. Haemodynamically significant arrhythmias are relatively infrequent, even with the combination of methylxanthines and β receptor agonists; however, β agonist induced hypokalaemia heightens the risk.

Ipratropium
Ipratropium bromide has a mild additional bronchodilating effect when added to β agonists that may only be significant in severe asthma. 13 The safety profile and the fact that individual patients may obtain benefit have resulted in aerosolised ipratropium (500 µg 6 hourly) being recommended for the treatment of acute severe asthma. 14

Aminophylline
The addition of aminophylline does not add to the bronchodilating effect of optimal doses of β agonists. 15 Other reported benefits of aminophylline such as improving diaphragmatic endurance, stimulating ventilatory drive, and anti-inflammatory effect do not seem to improve outcome in acute severe asthma. 16–18 Currently, aminophylline is not recommended as a first line drug in acute asthma management and its inclusion as a second line agent is still debated. 19 However, when other agents fail to achieve bronchodilation, aminophylline can be used providing dosing regimens are adhered to. Typically, a loading dose of 5 mg/kg by slow intravenous infusion over 20 minutes is followed by an infusion of 500 µg/kg/h. If prolonged administration is required, daily monitoring of blood theophylline levels is essential. The therapeutic range is 55–110 µmol/l (10–20 mg/l).

ASSISTED VENTILATION
If there is inadequate response to drug treatment or if the patient is in extremis at presentation, mechanical ventilation may be required.

---

**Box 13.1 Contraindications to a trial of mask CPAP or NIV in acute severe asthma**

- Need for immediate endotracheal intubation
- Poor patient cooperation
- Inability of the ventilator to supply high FIO₂
- Hypercapnia (CPAP less likely to benefit than NIV)
- Excess respiratory secretions
- Lack of experienced staff and/or a high dependency area

**Mask continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) and non-invasive ventilation (NIV)**

In spontaneously breathing patients the application of low levels of mask CPAP (3–6 cm HO) may improve respiratory rate, dyspnoea, and work of breathing in asthma, particularly if there is evidence of smoking related lung disease. 20–22 There is a danger that CPAP may worsen lung hyperinflation. If patients are intolerant of the mask or do not derive benefit, CPAP should be withdrawn. In hypercapnic patients CPAP alone may not improve ventilation.

Few studies have looked specifically at NIV in asthma. Low levels of CPAP and pressure support of 10–19 cm H₂O in acute severe asthma improved gas exchange and prevented endotracheal intubation in all but two of 17 hypercapnic patients. 23 However, the rate of intubation in patients with acute asthma, even in the presence of hypercapnia, is low at 3–8%. 24–26 It is reasonable to give asthmatic patients a trial of NIV over 1–2 hours in an HDU or ICU if there are no contraindications (box 13.1). 27 28 Deciding when to initiate NIV, when a trial of NIV has failed, and optimising NIV in this setting require considerable expertise. In our experience, high flow ventilators specifically designed for NIV (such as the BiPAP Vision; Respironics, Pittsburgh, USA) that allow significant mask and mouth leaks are better tolerated than many conventional ICU ventilators.

**Endotracheal intubation**

Cardiopulmonary arrest and deteriorating consciousness are absolute indications for intubation and assisted ventilation. Hypercapnia, acidosis, and clinical signs of severe disease at presentation may not require immediate intubation before an aggressive trial of conventional bronchodilator therapy. 29, 30 Conversely, progressive deterioration with increasing distress or physical exhaustion may warrant intubation and mechanical ventilation without the presence of hypercapnia.

Once it has been decided that mechanical ventilation is required, the necessary medications, suitable monitoring equipment, and expert help should be sought. An understanding of the pathophysiology and anticipation of difficulties can minimise the complications associated with endotracheal intubation and ventilation. The best technique for intubation is generally that most familiar to the clinician performing the procedure.

The process of intubation begins with explanation and reassurance for the patient, followed by pre-oxygenation. The asthmatic patient is often dehydrated and the combination of PEEPi, the loss of endogenous catecholamines, and the vasodilating properties of the anaesthetic agents can cause catastrophic hypotension. 31 Volume resuscitation before induction of anaesthesia can limit the degree of hypotension but vasconstrictors such as ephedrine or metaraminol should be at hand.

Intubation is best performed by direct laryngoscopy after induction of general anaesthesia. Endoscopic methods have been advocated with either oral or nasal intubation, but laryngeal spasm and further bronchoconstriction may occur. Satisfactory local anaesthesia of the oropharynx, naopharynx, and larynx is therefore essential. Longer term sedation is required once the airway has been secured. Some recommendations for successful and safe endotracheal intubation are summarised in box 13.2.
Drug therapy for intubation and mechanical ventilation

Anaesthetic agents and sedatives

Etomidate and thiopentone are short acting midazolam and barbiturate drugs, respectively, that are commonly used for intubation although rarely bronchospasm and anaphylactoid reactions have been reported. Longer term sedation may be obtained by infusion of midazolam (2–10 mg/h); metabolites may accumulate in renal and hepatic impairment. Propofol is a useful drug for intubation and intermediate term sedation, mainly because of its rapid onset and offset of action. It is easily titratable for intubation, providing deep sedation rapidly, although it has no analgesic properties. However, vasodilatation and hypotension occur, especially in dehydrated patients. Relatively little literature regarding its specific use in asthma is available. The doses of all the above agents need to be adjusted for patient size and pre-existing level of consciousness.

Ketamine is a general anaesthetic agent that has been used before, during, and after intubation in patients with acute severe asthma. It has sympathomimetic and bronchodilating properties. The usual dose for intubation is 1–2 mg/kg given intravenously over 2–4 minutes. It may increase blood pressure and heart rate, lower seizure threshold, alter mood, and cause delirium. Inhalational anaesthetics used for gas induction have the advantage of bronchodilation and may make muscle relaxation unnecessary. However, specialised anaesthetic equipment is required for this approach.

Opioids are a useful addition to sedatives and provide analgesia during intubation and mechanical ventilation. Morphine in large boluses causes histamine release, which may worsen bronchoconstriction and hypotension. Some intravenous preparations also contain metabisulphite, to which some asthmatics are sensitive. Fentanyl is a better choice of opioid for intubation as it inhibits airway reflexes and is short acting. It causes less histamine release than morphine but large boluses may cause bronchospasm and chest wall rigidity.

Neuromuscular blocking drugs

Rapid sequence induction with cricoid pressure should be used to prevent aspiration of gastric contents. Suxamethonium, a depolarising muscle relaxant, is widely used. It has a rapid onset and short duration of action but may cause hyperkalaemia and increased intracranial pressure. Rocuronium, a non-depolarising muscle relaxant with an acceptably rapid onset, offers an alternative. Allergic sensitivity may occur to any neuromuscular blocking agent and most may also cause histamine release and the potential for bronchospasm, particularly in bolus doses. Atracurium boluses should be avoided because of this possibility and vecuronium or pancuronium infusions used for longer term maintenance of muscle relaxation.

Myopathy and muscle weakness are well recognised complications of the long term administration of non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking agents in asthmatic patients with an incidence of about 30%.

The use of neuromuscular blocking agents should therefore be kept to a minimum.

Mechanical ventilation

Mechanical ventilation provides respiratory support while drug therapy reverses bronchospasm and airway inflammation. Abolishing hypoxia is the most important aim.

Modes of ventilation

Commonly adopted ventilation modes include pressure limited and time cycled (pressure control or bilevel ventilation) or volume limited and time cycled modes (synchronised intermittent mandatory ventilation, SIMV). In pressure limited modes, maximum airway pressure is set and the tidal volume delivered depends on respiratory system compliance. Volume cycled modes, however, deliver a set tidal volume and can be successfully and safely used provided an airway pressure limit is set appropriately. As the patient improves and begins to breathe, spontaneously triggered modes of ventilation such as pressure support ventilation (PSV) can be introduced.

Ventilator settings

The major variables that need to be set when placing a patient on mechanical ventilation include the oxygen concentration of inspired gas (FiO2), tidal volume (Vt) or inspiratory pressure, ventilator rate, inspiratory to expiratory time ratio (I:E ratio), and PEEP. The aims are to minimise airway pressure, allowing sufficient time for completion of expiration while achieving adequate alveolar ventilation. Suggested initial ventilator settings are shown in box 13.3.

Outcome is improved in mechanically ventilated asthmatics by limiting airway pressure using a low respiratory rate and tidal volume while permitting a moderate degree of hypercarbia and respiratory acidosis.

Acute severe asthma 89
Humidification of inspired gas is particularly important in asthmatic patients to prevent thickening of secretions and drying of airway mucosa, a stimulus for bronchospasm in itself. 76

Ventilator alarms
These include peak pressure and low tidal volume/low minute ventilation alarms. If exceptionally high airway pressures occur or there is a sudden fall in Vt, blockage of the endotracheal tube, pneumothorax, or lobar collapse should be excluded. Plateau rather than peak airway pressure may provide the best measure of alveolar pressure and provide the best predictor of barotrauma, together with measures of hyperinflation such as PEEPi. 76

Extrinsic PEEP
Low level CPAP may be beneficial in spontaneously breathing, mechanically ventilated patients, especially if expiratory muscle activity is contributing to dynamic airways collapse. However, in mechanically ventilated paralysed patients extrinsic PEEP was of no benefit at low levels and was detrimental at high levels because the fall in gas trapping was outweighed by the rise in functional residual capacity (FRC). 77, 78 However, in this study large Vt were used (up to 18 ml/kg); furthermore PEEPi and arterial blood gases were not measured. Changes in FRC and gas trapping may guide the level of PEEP. Applied extrinsic PEEP should not exceed PEEPi.

Topical drug delivery to the ventilated patient
Mechanical ventilation, whether invasive or non-invasive, may compromise the delivery of bronchodilator aerosols. The amount of nebulised drug reaching the airways depends on the nebuliser design, driving gas flow, characteristics of the ventilator tubing, and the size of the endotracheal tube. 47, 79 Drug delivery may vary from 0% to 42% in ventilated patients. 79 The presence of humidification alone may reduce drug deposition by as much as 40%, but may be reversed by the addition of a spacer device. 79, 80 Both ultrasonic and jet nebulisers are effective in ventilated patients. 81 Nebulisers may, however, be a source of bacterial contamination. 79 Metered dose inhalers have been widely used and may provide at least as good drug delivery as nebulisers, depending on actuator design and the presence of humidification and spacer devices. 79, 80 The recommended characteristics of aerosol delivery systems used in ventilated patients are shown in box 13.4. Ideally, each aerosol delivery system should be evaluated for each type of ventilator circuit used. 81

THERAPEUTIC OPTIONS IN THE NON-RESPONDING PATIENT
A proportion of patients improve rapidly following the introduction of mechanical ventilation, and weaning should occur in line with this improvement. Unfortunately, for some there is difficulty in achieving adequate ventilation or there is persistent hypoxia. Difficulty in ventilation may be due to refractory bronchospasm, extreme hyperinflation, or mucus plugging.

Manual compression
This technique was first described anecdotally by Watts in 1984. 75 Hyperinflation is relieved by manual compression of the chest wall during expiration. 76 The technique has been advocated and used with success in both intubated and non-intubated patients, although it has not been fully evaluated by a controlled clinical study in humans. 82, 83

Mucolytics
There is often a striking degree of mucus impaction in both large and small airways that contributes to hyperinflation, segmental and lobar collapse with shunting, increased airway pressure, and barotrauma. Chest physiotherapy and mucolytics have no proven benefit. Bronchoscopic lavage with locally applied acetylcysteine may be used to help clear impacted secretions in selected refractory patients but its routine use is not advocated. 75 Recently, recombinant DNase, a mucolytic prescribed for sputum liquefaction in cystic fibrosis, has been used to treat mucus impaction in asthma but there are no clinical trials. 84

Inhalational anaesthetic agents
Halothane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane are potent bronchodilators in asthmatic patients receiving mechanical ventilation who have failed to respond to conventional β adrenergic agents. 85 Experimental evidence indicates a direct effect on bronchial smooth muscle mediated via calcium dependent channels as well as by modulating vagal, histamine, allergen, and hypoxia induced bronchoconstrictor mechanisms. 85 Furthermore, these agents reduce pulmonary vascular tone resulting in lower pulmonary artery pressures in acute asthma. 86 Bronchodilator responses are seen in the form of reduced peak airway pressures within minutes, associated with improved ventilation distribution (lower PaCO2) and reduced air trapping. 87 Although bronchodilator effects are seen at sub-anaesthetic concentrations, these agents also offer a relatively expensive method of sedation. A few ICU ventilators, such as the Siemens Servo 900 series, can be fitted with a vaporiser allowing anaesthetic gases to be administered. Effective exhaled gas scavenging systems are required when using inhalational anaesthetics in the ICU. If this facility is not available a Cardiff canister can be added to the expiratory port of the ventilator to remove exhaled anaesthetic gases. Significant side effects such as hypotension and myocardial irritability exist, and prolonged administration of some agents may result in bromide or fluoride toxicity. 88 Sevoflurane, a halogenated ether, is largely devoid of cardiorespiratory side effects and may be the preferred agent. Administration of sub-anaesthetic concentrations of these agents via face mask may relieve bronchospasm refractory to conventional treatment. 89

One of the difficult aspects of mechanical ventilation of the acute asthmatic patient is the weaning and extubation process. The presence of the endotracheal tube within the larynx and trachea induces bronchoconstriction which becomes

---

**Box 13.4 Recommendations for aerosol delivery to mechanically ventilated patients**

**Metered dose inhaler (MDI) system**
- Spacer or holding chamber
- Location in inspiratory limb rather than Y piece
- No humidification (briefly discontinue)
- Actuate during lung inflation
- Large endotracheal tube internal diameter
- Prolonged inspiratory time

**Jet nebuliser system**
- Mount nebuliser in inspiratory limb
- Delivery may be improved by inspiratory triggering
- Increase inspiratory time and decrease respiratory rate
- Use a spacer
- High flow to generate aerosol
- High volume fill
- Stop humidification
- Consider continuous nebulisation

**Ultrasonic nebulisers**
- Position in inspiratory limb prior to a spacer device
- Use high power setting
- Use a high volume fill
- Maximise inspiratory time
- Drugs must be stable during ultrasonic nebulisation

---
troublesome as the sedation is withdrawn in preparation for extubation. Use of an inhalational anaesthetic agent allows the endotracheal tube to be removed under anaesthesia with the confident expectation of rapid recovery once the anaesthetic is discontinued.

Helium
A mixture of helium and oxygen (heliox) may reduce the work of breathing and improve gas exchange because of its low density that reduces airway resistance and hyperinflation. However, the benefits are marginal and the concentration of inspired oxygen is consequently decreased. Flow meters and nebuliser generator systems must be adapted for heliox use in ventilated patients.7 The use of heliox to prevent intubation has not been studied, but dyspnoea scores were improved in one study, possibly by reducing the work of breathing.7

Magnesium sulphate
Early anecdotal reports suggested benefit from intravenous magnesium sulphate, which has been inconsistently supported by randomised studies.8,9 A significant benefit was recently observed in children receiving intravenous magnesium sulphate (40 mg/kg) during acute asthma attacks.10 Overall, the case for magnesium sulphate in acute asthma requires further evaluation in both adults and children.

Leukotriene inhibitors
Leukotrienes are inflammatory mediators known to be active in the airway inflammation of asthma. Leukotriene receptor antagonists (zafirlukast, montelukast) and synthesis blockers (zileuton) currently have a relatively minor role in the airway inflammation of asthma. Leukotriene receptor antagonists are mainly used in the prevention of exercise-induced asthma.

Platelet activating factor (PAF) inhibitors
PAF inhibitors attenuate the late response in asthma but have limited clinical efficacy.11

Nitrile oxide (NO)
NO exerts a weak bronchodilator effect.12 It dilates pulmonary arteries and, when inhaled, may improve ventilation/perfusion matching.

OUTCOME AND FOLLOW UP
ICU admission identifies an asthmatic patient as a member of a poor prognostic group.13,14 Follow up should include a focus on anti-inflammatory therapy and a written management plan that may include the emergency use of intramuscular adrenaline. Issues such as access to health care services, compliance with treatment, avoidance of triggers, socioeconomic and psychosocial factors also need to be addressed.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT
The authors would like to thank Dr Duncan Young for his review of the manuscript and helpful suggestions.

REFERENCES
ventilation.

Moreira et al. (2000) found that the use of heliox in mechanically ventilated patients with severe asthma was associated with improved gas exchange and reduced work of breathing compared to room air.

Hauser et al. (2000) reported on the safety and efficacy of intravenous magnesium sulfate in the treatment of acute asthma, highlighting its potential benefits in reducing airway inflammation and improving respiratory status.


airway inflammatory mediators in atopic asthma.


Lange CF, Finlay WH. Overcoming the adverse effect of humidity in aerosol delivery by pressurized metered-dose inhalers during mechanical ventilation. Respir Care 2000;45:1614–8.

14 The pulmonary circulation and right ventricular failure
K McNeil, J Dunning, N W Morrell

The lungs are the only organs that receive the entire cardiac output which is delivered at a mean resting pulmonary arterial pressure of 15 mm Hg. The capacitance pulmonary arteries are larger in calibre and have thinner walls than their systemic counterparts. Moreover, the pulmonary circulation possesses little resting vascular tone and has a large reserve for recruitment of vascular segments that are normally non-perfused. Thus, the pulmonary circulation is a low pressure, low resistance circuit capable of handling large increases in pulmonary blood flow (up to sixfold with strenuous exercise) with only small changes in pressure. The maintenance of a low pulmonary capillary pressure is vital in preserving the function of the blood-gas barrier.

In accordance with this low pressure circuit, the right ventricle (RV) is a thin muscle with limited contractile reserve, which has significant implications for both the prognosis associated with severe pulmonary hypertension (PHT) and for the principles underlying the clinical management of PHT and RV failure.

Both PHT and RV dysfunction are common complications of the complex medical disorders experienced in the intensive care unit. In most circumstances the PHT is mild or moderate in degree and associated with RV dysfunction rather than frank right heart failure. Occasionally, however, patients do present with life-threatening PHT and associated RV failure requiring prompt and appropriate intervention.

Right heart dysfunction and PHT of varying severity are commonly encountered in patients with chronic lung disease and left ventricular failure, but these specific entities will not be considered further. This chapter will rather concentrate on the management of severe PHT in the setting of RV failure. In addition, we will discuss the relevance and treatment of PHT in the context of acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) in adults. Definitions of PHT and calculations for mean pulmonary artery pressure (PAP) are shown in Table 14.1.

In the intensive care unit haemodynamics are usually measured using a flow directed, balloon tipped pulmonary artery catheter. Cardiac output is most commonly and conveniently determined by the Fick principle but this is not used frequently in clinical practice. Transoesophageal echocardiography can also be used to estimate cardiac output using Doppler imaging. The procedure requires sedation, however, and is not therefore usually performed in cases with severe PHT unless the patient is intubated (or undergoing another essential procedure).

AETIOLOGY OF PULMONARY HYPERTENSION
The WHO consensus conference in 1998 reclassified PHT according to clinicopathological criteria. Both the site of pathology (arterial or venous) and causative factors (association with respiratory disease/hypoxia, thromboembolic disease, or primary vascular pathology) were included. This classification adds to our understanding of the mechanisms involved and provides a good starting point in developing a rational clinical approach to the management of severe PHT.

By this classification, the cause of PHT is divided into either an intrinsic disease of the pulmonary vessels or a vascular response to another disease process. In general, treatment for this second group should be directed at the underlying disease rather than at the pulmonary vasculature per se. Probably the commonest causes of PHT in the ITU are raised left atrial pressure and hypoxaemia. Treatment should be directed at the underlying cardiac or respiratory disease, respectively.

THE PULMONARY CIRCULATION IN ARDS
The acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) is characterised by non-hydrostatic pulmonary oedema and refractory hypoxaemia, and complicates up to 25% of cases of the systemic inflammatory response syndrome. The consensus definitions of ARDS and acute lung injury (ALI) are shown in Table 14.2. PHT with increased pulmonary vascular resistance is common, even when systemic vascular resistance is low. The degree of pulmonary arterial hypertension is usually mild to moderate but promotes the accumulation of extravascular lung water and can cause right ventricular dysfunction, reducing ejection fraction and cardiac output. The presence of PHT has been shown to be an adverse prognostic indicator in patients with ARDS.

Initially, a number of factors may contribute to the increase in PAP in ARDS. Increased circulating levels of vasoactive mediators such as serotonin, endothelin-1, thromboxane and leukotrienes may contribute to the increase in pulmonary vascular tone. There may also be an important contribution from increased discharge from the sympathetic nervous system. Although hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction may play

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHT definitions</th>
<th>Mean PAP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rest</td>
<td>&gt;25 mm Hg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise</td>
<td>&gt;30 mm Hg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>&lt;30 mm Hg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>30–45 mm Hg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>&gt;45 mm Hg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Calculation of mean PAP: (1) mPAP = dPAP + (sPAP – dPAP)/3; (2) mPAP = 2 × dPAP + sPAP/3 (these are the same equation expressed in two commonly used forms); d = diastolic, s = systolic.
Table 14.2 Recommended criteria for definition of acute lung injury (ALI) and acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). Modified from Bernard et al.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Timing</th>
<th>Oxygenation</th>
<th>Chest radiograph</th>
<th>Pulmonary artery wedge pressure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALI</td>
<td>Acute onset</td>
<td>PaO(_2)/FiO(_2) &lt; 400 kPa (regardless of PEEP level)</td>
<td>Bilateral infiltrates on frontal chest radiograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARDS</td>
<td>Acute onset</td>
<td>PaO(_2)/FiO(_2) &lt; 26.7 kPa (regardless of PEEP level)</td>
<td>Bilateral infiltrates on frontal chest radiograph</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

some role in increasing pulmonary vascular resistance locally, generally the pulmonary vascular response to hypoxia is reduced in patients with ARDS. Indeed, administration of 100% oxygen to patients with ARDS does not significantly alter pulmonary haemodynamics. Structural changes in small pulmonary arteries (pulmonary vascular remodelling) develop in patients with ARDS of more than a few days duration, with the severity of the changes correlating with the duration of lung injury. Initially, acute endothelial injury and thrombomodi- loli are visible on histopathological examination. Fibrocellular intimal obliteration of arteries, veins, and lymphatic vessels occurs in those surviving more than 10 days. Manipulation of the pulmonary circulation in patients with ARDS is aimed at improving systemic oxygen availability and improving right ventricular dysfunction. Reducing pulmonary vascular resistance using vasodilators such as prostacyclin or nitrates improves cardiac output in ARDS, but concurrent vasodilation occurring in poorly ventilated lung regions can worsen ventilation/perfusion (V/Q) matching, increasing shunt fraction and exacerbating hypoxaemia. The aim of inhaled vasodilator treatment is to confine vasodilation to those areas of the pulmonary circulation receiving the most ventilation, optimising V/Q matching. Thus, inhaled nitric oxide (NO) reduces pulmonary vascular resistance, improves right ventricular function, and improves arterial oxygenation in patients with ARDS. The current recommendation is that NO treatment in ARDS should be limited to patients who are optimally ventilated and have an arterial oxygen tension (PaO\(_2\)) of < 12 kPa with a fractional inspired oxygen (FiO\(_2\)) of 1.0. Similar improvements have been reported with the use of nebulised prostacyclin in ARDS. However, large randomised trials have not shown that selective pulmonary vasodilators alter the outcome in ARDS in terms of a reduction in either the duration of mechanical ventilation or mortality.

SEVERE PULMONARY HYPERTENSION

In general, the clinical presentation of severe PHT reflects the degree of resulting right heart dysfunction or failure. The structure and geometry of the RV dictates its ability to cope with increased PAP. If the pressure increase occurs over a long period of time (months to years), the RV has a limited capacity to cope via hypertrophy. By contrast, after severe acute rises in pulmonary vascular resistance—for example, following a massive central pulmonary embolism—the ability of the RV to adapt is severely limited. Usually it simply dilates and can rarely generate, nor less sustain, a systolic pressure of 50 mm Hg. This results in a low output and haemodynamic shock. Occasionally in this acute setting the venous pulses, especially the femoral pulse, will become “arterialised” due to marked tricuspid regurgitation and, with the accompanying systemic hypotension, can be mistaken for its arterial counterpart.

Right ventricular failure is also manifest as systemic venous hypertension. This results in the classical clinical signs of jugular venous engorgement (with “C” waves due to tricuspid regurgitation), pulsatile hepatomegaly, lower limb oedema, and occasionally anasarca. In addition to these clinically obvious effects there is also a concomitant congestion of the splanchnic circulation in general, with resulting gut oedema. In these circumstances patients often become refractory to oral diuretics, presumably due to poor absorption.

Other less usual presentations may develop in patients with severe primary pulmonary hypertension (PPH) attributable to the effects of venous hypertension. Renal dysfunction is common, resulting from both arterial hypotension and the high renal venous pressure. This reduces the filtration pressure across the glomerulus and may result in nephrotic syndrome as the presenting clinical manifestation of PHT. Similarly, visual disturbances associated with papilloedema and delirium due to severe cerebral venous hypertension mimicking cavernous sinus thrombosis may occur. In all cases effective treatment of the PHT leading to improvement in RV function and reduction in systemic venous pressures can lead to resolution.

Investigation of severe PHT

In most cases severe PHT can be readily diagnosed on clinical grounds. Where right heart failure dominates the clinical picture, severe PHT is usually evident. However, it is imperative to elucidate the underlying cause in order to administer appropriate treatment.

Patients with severe PHT and RV failure are frequently too unwell or too unstable to undergo definitive investigations. Where feasible, spiral CT angiography is the investigation of choice for the diagnosis of acute central pulmonary embolism. This examination will identify large central clots with positive and negative predictive values of over 90% compared with pulmonary angiography. Radiological signs of severe PHT such as enlargement of the pulmonary arteries and right sided chambers are also evident. Conversely, the left sided chambers are normal or reduced (compressed) in size.

Echocardiography at the bedside may show signs of RV pressure overload as well as excluding other causes of haemodynamic collapse such as pericardial tamponade. With severe RV dilatation and dysfunction, left ventricular function as assessed by echocardiography is usually reduced due to paradoxic movement of the septum and distortion of normal left/right heart dynamics. It is vitally important in this setting to attribute correctly the low cardiac output state to the right sided problems as there are important differences in the principles of treating a failing RV and those used to support the left side.

Pulmonary artery catheterisation will confirm a low cardiac index in association with a raised pulmonary vascular resistance. A low pulmonary artery capillary occlusion pressure (< 15 mm Hg), reflecting reduced left atrial pressure, effectively excludes left heart dysfunction as the cause of PHT and the low output state. However, in patients with severely deranged haemodynamics, accurate placement of a pulmonary artery catheter can be difficult and the data obtained need to be interpreted with caution.

TREATMENT

General principles

Pulmonary hypertension (PHT)

The principles of treating PHT are based upon reducing RV afterload and preventing or treating the complications of RV dysfunction. Attempted correction of hypoxaemia is mandatory in the treatment of any patient with severe PHT. In the presence of a right to left shunt this may not be possible, but
in these situations it is usually possible at least to ameliorate the added oxygen desaturation associated with sleep and exercise. As in any low cardiac output state, anticoagulation is desirable. With intrinsic disease of the pulmonary arteries, several vasodilator strategies can be considered. For patients requiring mechanical ventilation inhaled NO can be used to maximise \textit{V/Q} matching, as vasodilation only occurs in ventilated areas.\(^9\) Prostacyclin (PG1,\(^{11}\)) is also an effective pulmonary vasodilator but, when administered intravenously, can result in worsening of \textit{V/Q} matching.\(^{12}\) The short biological half life of inhaled NO (seconds) leads to a greater effect on the pulmonary than the systemic circulation, its biological effects being rapidly eliminated by reaction with haemoglobin. Prostacyclin has a rather longer half life in the circulation (1–2 minutes) and usually lowers pulmonary and systemic vascular resistance, although the systemic effects can be minimised by inhaled treatment. Calcium channel blockers should not be used in patients with significant cardiac dysfunction as their negative inotropic effects may further impair RV performance.\(^{13}\) Nitric oxide donors such as nitroprusside or nitrates are rarely effective in this setting, and usually exacerbate the systemic hypotension associated with the low cardiac output syndrome.

\textbf{Right heart dysfunction}

The RV is designed to work with a low pressure circuit and, as such, has limited contractile reserve. For this reason RV support is aimed at reducing afterload. Severe acute RV dysfunction associated with PHT may present during heart or lung transplantation or surgery for pulmonary embolus or severe mitral valve disease. Inhaled NO may be useful in this setting to decrease pulmonary vascular resistance without reducing systemic arterial pressure, which is essential for the maintenance of coronary perfusion to the right ventricle. Inhaled NO in the dose range 20–40 ppm may benefit these patients.\(^{14}\) Unless the pulmonary vascular resistance can be reduced, inotropes are ineffective, imposing more work on a struggling RV. Inotropes can transiently improve cardiac output for 6–12 hours but inevitably the RV fails, resulting in a lethal downward spiral of increasing inotrope requirements but diminishing effect. Inotropes are, however, useful for supporting or augmenting RV contractility in situations where the pulmonary vascular resistance can be reduced through concomitant administration of vasodilator therapy. In this respect, a phosphodiesterase inhibitor such as enoximone\(^{15}\) is our preferred choice as its vasodilator properties contrast with the pulmonary vasoconstrictor effects characteristic of catecholamines.

Intra-aortic balloon counterpulsation is useful for short term RV support,\(^{16}\) augmenting coronary blood flow and increasing central systemic blood pressure, thereby reducing the need for pressor agents such as noradrenaline which are potent pulmonary vasoconstrictors. Most devices used in the context of RV support are modified from those used to support the failing left heart. When the lung function remains adequate to allow sufficient oxygenation and carbon dioxide removal, mechanical assist devices alone may be used to support the RV. When severe lung injury accompanies RV failure, mechanical RV support can be incorporated into either extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) or extracorporeal carbon dioxide removal (ECCOR) circuits.

Paracorporeal devices such as the Abiomed are implanted through a sternotomy using right atrial or ventricular cannulation for drainage to the pump chamber, with return to the pulmonary artery through a vascular conduit sutured to the pulmonary trunk. Such a procedure is highly invasive and the subsequent management of the pump is complex. In particular, maintaining a balance between vasodilator agents, inotropes, and filling pressures may be difficult to achieve. Overflowing the pump can result in gross pulmonary oedema, compounding an already difficult situation. A further source of difficulty may be experienced with the management of anticoagulation. While it is important to achieve adequate anticoagulation, intracranial haemorrhage may result if tight control is not maintained. Success is most likely in centres where there is familiarity with the management of these devices and their complications.

Although the use of ECMO is more complex, cannulation and the establishment of the ECMO circuit is less invasive than that required for most paracorporeal pulsatile ventricular assist devices. This technique is only of value when the insult necessitating its use is reversible. Although well established in children, its adoption in adult practice has been less widespread. Key components to successful intervention include early institution (ventilated less than 5 days), a flexible approach to cannulation (established percutaneously via femoral and jugular routes), and readiness to support other systems including the kidneys and liver.

Any attempt to support the RV with a mechanical device in the face of PHT is complicated. A multidisciplinary approach must be adopted, and there is no simple unifying technique. The advent of small axial and rotary blood pumps currently undergoing trials in left ventricular dysfunction may improve the outlook in this area in years to come.

Atrial septostomy has been used in the treatment of patients with severe PHT and RV compromise.\(^{17}\) This treatment evolved from the observation that patients with PPH and a patent foramen ovale lived longer than those with no septal defect.\(^{18}\) Creating a shunt at the atrial level decompresses the right sided chambers and augments left atrial filling with a concomitant increase in cardiac output and systemic oxygen transport. The resulting reduction in RV end diastolic pressure and wall tension are postulated to improve Starling haemodynamics and RV contractility. Although the resulting right to left shunt causes systemic oxygen desaturation (which is especially marked with exercise when PAP rises), this can usually be controlled with supplemental oxygen.

The clinical benefits reported following septostomy include resolution of syncopal and pre-syncopal episodes, decreased cough, decreased systemic venous congestion, and improved exercise tolerance. Our own experience of this procedure suggests it is most effective before the onset of severe RV dysfunction and, conversely, as reported by others,\(^{19}\) it has not been effective in patients with end stage right heart failure or acute right heart failure severe enough to require admission to the ITU. Atrial septostomy has been used primarily in patients with advanced PPH as a bridge to heart-lung transplantation although its exact role (in particular the optimal timing of the procedure) is not known. As our own experience with this procedure has developed, it is being used earlier in the course of disease. Experience of the procedure in any form of severe PHT is very limited and at present there are no controlled clinical studies in any disease group.

\textbf{Thromboembolic disease}

The most common cause of acute severe PHT is massive central pulmonary thromboembolism. Some of the mechanisms involved in the development of shock in the setting of acute massive pulmonary embolism (PE) are shown in fig 14.1. The overall mortality from massive PE is 6–8%, increasing to 30% if complicated by systemic hypotension.\(^{20}\) Of those patients who fail to survive, 67% die within 1 hour of the onset of symptoms.\(^{21}\) The diagnosis of massive PE is suggested by the clinical presentation of right ventricular failure, a normal or oligo/aemic chest radiograph, and a suggestive ECG (right ventricular strain).\(^{22}\) In more stable patients there may be time to organise spiral CT pulmonary angiography.\(^{23}\) Echocardiography (either transthoracic or transoesophageal) may reveal thrombus in the pulmonary outflow tract or show signs of right ventricular dysfunction/hypokinesis.\(^{24,25}\)
Oxygen and analgesia should be given to all patients immediately. Invasive monitoring of the central venous pressure will guide cautious fluid and colloid replacement to optimise right sided filling pressures. The central venous pressure should be maintained at 15–20 cm H₂O. Overfilling worsens right venous function, but inadequate filling (or indeed overly aggressive diuresis) also compromises RV haemodynamics. If haemodynamic compromise is present and there are no contraindications (shown in box 14.1), thrombolysis should be considered for acute massive PE. The rationale for this is the greater mortality in patients with right ventricular dysfunction following acute PE. Thrombolysis leads to more rapid restoration of RV function than heparin alone. However, the potential benefits must justify the 1% risk of cerebral and fatal bleeding, and the effects of thrombolysis on mortality still need to be confirmed by a prospective randomised trial. Two hour infusion regimens of streptokinase (1.5 million units), urokinase and recombinant tissue plasminogen activator (rt-PA; 100 mg) followed by a heparin infusion have similar efficacy and safety profiles. Thrombolysis may be considered in all age groups and in postoperative patients. The risk of major haemorrhage with these agents increases with increasing age and body mass index. Bolus and front loaded regimens (administered over <2 hours) are simpler to use and are as effective as longer duration infusions. Streptokinase should not be used if patients have been previously treated with this agent. There is no benefit of direct central versus peripheral administration of thrombolytic agents. Patients may require inotropic treatment as the RV afterload is reduced and RV function recovers. It is important to maintain systemic arterial pressure and to ensure adequate perfusion of the right coronary artery.

Studies have now shown that echocardiography can also provide important prognostic information in acute PE. Although cardiogenic shock occurs in less than 5% of patients with PE, RV dysfunction or hypokinesis occurs in up to 40% of patients with a normal systemic blood pressure. The finding of RV dysfunction increases the mortality from PE at 14 days and 3 months. In a Swedish study mortality at 1 year was 45% in patients presenting with RV dysfunction compared with 15% in those with normal echocardiography. The benefits of thrombolysis may therefore extend to patients without overt shock but with RV dysfunction of any degree. This was borne out by the results from a multicentre registry showing a favourable clinical outcome in haemodynamically stable patients with major PE following thrombolysis. Again, these promising results await confirmation in a prospective randomised trial.

If thrombolysis is contraindicated (see box 14.1) in acute massive PE, other treatment options include mechanical clot fragmentation, transvenous catheter embolectomy, or surgical embolectomy. Insertion of an inferior vena caval filter should be considered in the presence of active haemorrhage to prevent further potentially fatal embolism. Surgical embolectomy may be appropriate in the setting of an experienced cardiovascular surgical unit. It should be reserved for severely compromised patients in refractory cardiogenic shock or patients requiring intermittent resuscitation. To be effective it must be performed as soon as possible. Total perioperative mortality is approximately 30%, with the highest mortality rates (~60%) in those patients who require preoperative cardiopulmonary resuscitation. An approach to the treatment of a patient with massive PE is shown in fig 14.2. In this setting, it is vitally important that chronic thromboembolic disease is excluded as the treatment of these two conditions is vastly different. Attempted surgical embolectomy (as opposed to pulmonary endarterectomy) in a patient with chronic thromboembolic PHT is fraught with disaster.

For patients with chronic thromboembolic PHT, the treatment of choice is pulmonary endarterectomy. In experienced hands this procedure results in a sustained reduction in pulmonary pressures and RV remodelling. Within the UK, Papworth Hospital is the National Specialist Commissioning Advisory Group (NSCAG) designated centre for pulmonary endarterectomy.

CONCLUSION

Unrecognised or untreated severe PHT has a poor prognosis related directly to the limited contractile reserves of the RV.

Figure 14.1 Factors involved in the generation of acute right ventricular failure following massive pulmonary embolism. MPAP=mean pulmonary artery pressure; CO=cardiac output; LV=left ventricle; PVO₂=ventricular oxygen tension.

Box 14.1 Indications and contraindications for thrombolytic treatment of acute PE

**Indications**
- Massive PE: first line treatment
- Haemodynamic compromise
- Failure to respond to anticoagulants

**Contraindications**

**Absolute**
- Recent major trauma or operation (within 10 days)
- Recent cerebrovascular accident (within 2 months)
- Bleeding diathesis
- Active internal bleeding

**Relative**
- Prolonged cardiopulmonary resuscitation
- Pregnancy
- Diabetic proliferative retinopathy
References to support the RV without effective treatment of the pulmonary circulation and right ventricular failure 97

...of the utmost importance that inotropes are not relied on often effective in other cases where increased pulmonary vasodilators such as intravenous prostacyclin or inhaled NO are...bolytic therapy is the treatment of choice. Pulmonary vasodilatation is the treatment of choice. Pulmonary vaso...monest cause of acute severe PHT is massive pulmonary...Appropriate treatment hinges on identification of the underlying cause, without effective afterload reduction the RV will inevitably fail and it is thus of the utmost importance that inotropes are not relied on to support the RV without effective treatment of the underlying problem.

REFERENCES


TRAUMA TO THE RESPIRATORY TRACT MAY CAUSE RESPIRATORY FAILURE AND CRITICAL ILLNESS BY SEVERAL MECHANISMS. IN THIS ARTICLE WE DISCUSS THREE SUCH CONDITIONS THAT ARE BEST MANAGED BY A MULTIDISCIPLINARY APPROACH BETWEEN PHYSICIANS AND SURGEONS. THORACIC TRAUMA AND INHALATION INJURY ARE COMMON CAUSES OF RESPIRATORY FAILURE AND CRITICAL ILLNESS OFTEN IN YOUNG PATIENTS WHO HAVE A GOOD PROGNOSIS IF THE ORIGINAL INSULT IS SURVIVABLE. THE PATHOGENESIS OF POST-PULMONARY RESECTION LUNG INJURY IS DISCUSSED AS A WELL DEFINED HUMAN MODEL OF THE ACUTE RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME (ARDS) WHOSE MANAGEMENT IS DISCUSSED IN DETAIL ELSEWHERE IN THIS BOOK.

DESPITE THE DISPARATE NATURE OF THESE CONDITIONS, COMMON THEMES Emerge IN THE SUPPORTIVE MANAGEMENT OF SUCH PATIENTS WHILE THEY RECOVER (FIG. 15.1). FOR EXAMPLE, ATLECTIC AND SPUMT RETENTION FOLLOW ALL MAJOR PULMONARY INSULTS, INCLUDING SURGERY, AS A CONSEQUENCE OF IMPAIRED COUGH AND SHALLOW RESPIRATION CAUSED BY PAIN AND WEAKNESS. THE TENDENCY TO DEVELOP RESPIRATORY FAILURE AND PNEUMONIA MAY BE MINIMISED BY ADEQUATE PAIN RELIEF, MOBILISATION, AND PHYSIOTHERAPY. INTERMITTENT NON-INVASIVE VENTILATORY SUPPORT AND TRACHEAL ASPIRATION FACILITATED BY A NASOPHARYNGEAL AIRWAY OR A MINI-TRACHEOSTOMY HELP A PATIENT WITH AN INADEQUATE COUGH.

THORACIC TRAUMA

EPIDEMIOLOGY
THORACIC TRAUMA ACCOUNTS FOR 20–25% OF DEATHS FOLLOWING TRAUMA AND CONtributes TO ANOTHER 25% OF TRAUMA-RELATED DEATHS. BLUNT THORACIC INJURIES HAVE A HIGHER MORTALITY THAN PENETRATING INJURIES BECAUSE OF A HIGHER INCIDENCE OF INJURY TO OTHER ORGANS. HOWEVER, IN BOTH ADULTS AND CHILDREN THE PREDOMINANT CAUSE OF DEATH IN PATIENTS WITH BLUNT THORACIC TRAUMA IS HEAD INJURY. APPROXIMATELY ONE THIRD OF ALL PATIENTS ADMITTED TO TRAUMA CENTRES HAVE SUSTAINED SERIOUS INJURIES TO THE CHEST AND THE LUNG PARENCHYMA IS INJURED IN A HIGH PROPORTION OF THESE. THE LEADING CAUSES OF BLUNT AND PENETRATING THORACIC TRAUMA ARE ROAD TRAFFIC ACCIDENTS, AND STABBINGS AND GUN SHOT WOUNDS, RESPECTIVELY.

BLUNT THORACIC TRAUMA CAN PRODUCE A SPECTRUM OF INJURIES—INCLUDING RIB FRACTURES, PNEUMOTHORAX, FLAIL SEGMENTS AND PULMONARY CONTUSION (FIG. 15.2)—ALL OF WHICH CAN IMPAIR PULMONARY FUNCTION. MORTALITY FOR PATIENTS WITH THREE OR MORE RIB FRACTURES IS DOUBLE THAT OF PATIENTS WITHOUT RIB FRACTURES (1.8% Versus 3.9%), AND THE PRESENCE OF THORACIC TRAUMA INCREASES THE OVERALL RISK OF DEATH FROM 27% TO 33%. THE PRESENCE OF THREE OR MORE RIB FRACTURES IN AN INJURED ADULT IDENTIFIES A SMALL GROUP WITH AN INCREASED RISK OF SPLENIC AND LIVER INJURY. SIMILARLY, THE PRESENCE OF PNEUMOTHORAX, HEMOTHORAX, PULMONARY CONTUSION, AND A FLAIL SEGMENT ARE EACH ASSOCIATED WITH AN INCREASED RISK OF DEATH.

THORACIC TRAUMA IS A SIGNIFICANT AETIOLOGICAL FACTOR IN UP TO 20% OF THE 1 500 000 CASES PER YEAR OF ARDS IN THE UNITED STATES. ARDS MAY OCCUR AS A RESULT OF DIRECT LUNG INJURY OR FROM THE SYSTEMIC SEQUELA OF EXTRATHORACIC INJURY. IN MECHANICALLY VENTILATED TRAUMA PATIENTS, 18% DEVELOPED ARDS WHEN PULMONARY CONTUSION WAS THEIR ONLY RISK FACTOR. HOWEVER, THE INCIDENCE ROSE TO 35% WHEN OTHER RISK FACTORS WERE PRESENT. PULMONARY CONTUSION IS THE MOST COMMON INJURY SEEN IN ASSOCIATION WITH THORACIC TRAUMA, OCCURRING IN 30–75% OF PATIENTS SUFFERING MAJOR THORACIC INJURY. CONTUSION OCCURS MORE FREQUENTLY FOLLOWING BLUNT THORACIC INJURY AND IS AN IMPORTANT FACTOR LEADING TO RESPIRATORY FAILURE. IT CAUSES DISRUPTION OF THE ALVEOLAR-CAPILLARY MEMBRANE AND INCREASED PULMONARY SHUNTING, WHICH MAY BE EXACERBATED BY A REDUCTION IN COMPLIANCE CAUSED BY RIB FRACTURE OR BY ATTENDANT PAIN AND MUSCLE SPASM. IN ONE SERIES 11% OF PATIENTS WITH SERIOUS ISOLATED PULMONARY CONTUSIONS DIED, WHEREAS THE MORTALITY WAS MUCH HIGHER (22%) IN PATIENTS WITH ASSOCIATED INJURIES.

MANAGEMENT
THE FIRST PRIORITIES IN MANAGING THORACIC TRAUMA ARE SECURING AN ADEQUATE AIRWAY AND VENTILATION, CONTROLLING BLEEDING, AND RESTORING ADEQUATE TISSUE PERfusion. MECHANICAL VENTILATION IS INDICATED WHEN GAS EXCHANGE IS INADEquate, DESPITE AGGRESSIVE PAIN MANAGEMENT AND PULMONARY TOILET. THE CERVICAL SPINE SHOULD BE STABILISEd DURING TRACHEAL INTUBATION IN CASES OF SEVERE BLUNT TRAUMA. IF AN ARRHhythmIA, HYPOTENSION, AND/OR CHANGES IN THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM OCCUR DURING OR IMMEDIATELY AFTER ENDOTRACHEAL INTUBATION, AIR EMBOLISM SHOULD BE SUSPECTED. AIR EMBOLISM IS A RARE CAUSE OF INTRACTABLE SHOCK AND CARDIAC ARREST FOLLOWING THORACIC TRAUMA.

DECREASED BREATH SOUNDS ON ONE SIDE, HYpOTENSION, NECK VEIN DISTENSION, AND DEVIATION OF THE TRACHEA SUGGEST THE PRESENCE OF A TENSION PNEUMOTHORAX WARRANTING IMMEDIATE NEEDLE DECOMPRESSION OR TUBE THORACOSTOMY. A SMALL WELL TOLERATED PNEUMOTHORAX IN A spontaneously breathing patient may suddenly be converted into a tension pneumothorax after positive pressure is applied to the airways. NEARLY ALL AIR LEAKS WILL EVENTUALLY SEAL IF THE LUNG IS FULLY EXPANDED AND THE CHEST TUBE IS PLACED ON SUCTION. GENERALLY, SURGICAL INTERVENTION IS CONSIDERED IF AN AIR LEAK PERSISTS FOR 14 DAYS. THE EXCEPTION TO THIS RULE IS THE PATIENT WITH A MAJOR BRONCHIAL INJURY, WHICH IS SUGGESTED BY A VERY LARGE AIR LEAK, AN INABILITY TO RE-EXPAND THE LUNG WITH CLOSED TUBE THORACOSTOMY, AND USUALLY CONFIRMED BY BRONCHOSCOPY. IN GENERAL, INJURIES TO THE TRACHEA OR MAJOR BRONCHI REQUIRE OPERATIVE REPAIR.

HYpOTENSION WITHOUT NECK VEIN DISTENSION, TRACHEAL DEVIATION AND DULLNESS TO PERCussion
suggests a significant haemothorax. In most cases bleeding will stop once the lung has been re-expanded using tube thoracostomy. Indications for thoracotomy are an initial loss of at least 1500 ml of blood upon placement of the chest tube, or continued bleeding of 200–300 ml/h. Atelectasis is the major preventable cause of trauma deaths in hospital, and hypotension following injury should be considered to be due to hypovolaemia until proved otherwise. Patients who have a retained haemothorax are at risk of empyema or a fibrothorax with lung entrapment. Non-operative management using closed tube thoracostomy has a lower likelihood of success when there is a significant amount of retained clot, if the fluid is viscous, or if it has a low pH. A larger empyema generally requires thoracotomy with decortication and drainage, particularly if an extensive pleural peel has developed. Sternal fracture may be associated with cardiac injury and is an indication for a 12 lead electrocardiogram (ECG) and cardiac monitoring for 12 hours. Acute cardiac tamponade should be suspected in patients who have refractory shock and evidence of raised central venous pressure. Pericardiocentesis is an indication for a 12 lead electrocardiogram (ECG) and cardiac monitoring for 12 hours. Acute cardiac tamponade may be performed instead of aortography in selected patients, particularly if an extensive pleural peel has developed. Aortography or chest CT scanning are definitive tests for blunt aortic injury and should be obtained in patients who have a wide mediastinum. Transeosophageal echocardiography can be performed instead of aortography in selected patients, allowing good views of the descending aorta but not the upper ascending aorta or aortic arch. Penetrating injuries to the oesophagus are relatively uncommon, and blunt injuries to the oesophagus are rare. In patients not undergoing surgical exploration of a penetrating wound, the diagnosis of oesophageal injury can be made from radiographic studies. In general, oesophageal injuries are managed operatively. If the injury is more than 24 hours old, mediastinal inflammation may make it impossible to close the perforation; in this case, drainage with or without diversion may be the only option.

Patients with rib fractures are more likely to require thoracotomy and their length of stay in the ICU is also significantly increased. Multiple rib fractures and flail chest (at least three contiguous ribs, each fractured in two places) suggest associated intrathoracic injury and pneumothorax or haemothorax. The mortality rate for patients with flail chest injuries is 30–33%, with 30% of deaths related to intrathoracic injury, 30% to extrathoracic injury (most commonly closed head injury), and 30% related to multiple organ failure and ARDS. In a study of 144 consecutive patients with blunt chest trauma, the mortality rate for pulmonary contusion alone or flail chest alone was 16%, whereas the combination of pulmonary contusion and flail chest resulted in a mortality rate of 42%. Flail chest can lead to paradoxical ventilation, generating inefficient ventilation with progressive respiratory distress and failure. Respiratory failure in flail chest may also result from the increased work of breathing, pain, compromised cough, and atelectasis. A flail chest alone is not an indication for mechanical ventilation if the patient has adequate gas exchange. However, all patients require tracheal intubation but rather alleviation of pain so that effective tidal volumes and vital capacities can be generated. However, patients with flail chest require mechanical ventilation more frequently than those without flail segment. The use of non-invasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV) in patients with a flail segment and lesser degrees of pulmonary contusion has also been described. The decision to stabilise
Thoracic trauma, inhalation injury and post-pulmonary resection lung injury in intensive care

the chest wall surgically in flail chest is based on the experience and judgement of the surgeon. To date, the goal of minimising intubation time by internal fixation of rib fractures has not been proven to be effective in a randomised trial. However, a patient who either fails to wean or manifests a persistent chest wall deformity may benefit from surgical management. In addition, if thoracotomy is indicated for other reasons in a patient with a flail segment, it would appear reasonable to take the opportunity to stabilise the rib fractures.

Traditionally, the effect of the flail segment on pulmonary mechanics was thought to be the most significant aspect of the injury. However, pain is now recognised as the primary factor affecting pulmonary function.17 By enabling the patient to take adequate tidal volumes and cough effectively, relief of pain from rib fractures can prevent the development of atelectasis, pneumonia, and sepsis, and obviate the need for mechanical ventilation in patients with severe chest trauma.20,21 The standard of care has evolved from intubation and mechanical ventilation for all patients to optimisation of pain control combined with chest physiotherapy.22 Systemic analgesics may be helpful in relieving pain but detrimental to the patient with marginal pulmonary mechanics in whom any reduction in respiratory drive may lead to hypoxia, atelectasis, and the need for mechanical ventilation.23 The development of regional techniques has revolutionised the management of blunt thoracic trauma, providing a range of options for analgesia that should be tailored to individual needs.24 The use of epidural catheters for continuous administration of opiates or local anaesthetics is the preferred technique for pain control in severe thoracic trauma and rarely produces any clinically significant alteration in pulmonary function.25–27 Useful alternatives are intercostal nerve blocks and intrapleural local anaesthetic infusions.28 The primary disadvantage of intercostal nerve blocks, however, is their relatively short duration of action (12.3 hours in one study), requiring repeated injections for adequate pain control after trauma. The mechanism of action of intrapleural analgesia is unclear, but may be the simultaneous blockade of multiple intercostal nerves or nerve endings in the pleura.29 A retrospective review of outcome factors among elderly patients after thoracic trauma showed clear improvement when an epidural catheter was used for analgesia compared with systemic narcotic alone.31 There was a decreased incidence of pulmonary complications in the epidural group, and the incidence of pneumonia, ARDS, and death was significantly lower in these patients.32 In a further study in which the efficacy of epidural and intrapleural catheters for pain relief and improvements in pulmonary function was compared, continuous epidural analgesia was clearly superior.33 The only negative effect of epidural analgesia consistently found in this study was hypotension that was easily corrected.34

 Most patients with penetrating chest injuries can be treated non-operatively, with only 10–15% requiring surgery.35 In a series of 373 patients with penetrating lung injuries, chest tube insertion was found to be the only treatment required in 76% of patients and, of the remaining 24% who underwent exploratory thoracotomy, half required pulmonary repair or resection.23 The majority of patients with mild to moderate chest wall injury who survive the acute phase recover with little or no pulmonary disability.36

INHALATION INJURY

Epidemiology

Inhalation injury can be thermal and/or chemical. It accompanies severe burns in up to 35% of those admitted to burn centres and accounts for 50–70% of burn related deaths.22,37 The first comprehensive description of inhalation injury resulted from the 1942 Boston Coconut Grove fire in which 491 people died.38 Furthermore, in the aftermath of the 2001 World Trade Center terrorist attack in New York, inhalation injury was the most frequent reason that survivors sought medical attention.39 Inhalation injury predisposes burn patients to pneumonia, respiratory failure, and death.40 Most burn patients who die have multiple organ failure; in one study mortality was 67% in patients with isolated pulmonary failure but 92% when pulmonary failure was complicated by failure of at least one other system.41 The incidence of ARDS complicating burns is 2–7%,42 but is significantly higher in patients with inhalation injury.43 In a review of 529 burn patients admitted over a 4 year period, patients with inhalation injury had a 73% incidence of respiratory failure and a 20% incidence of ARDS.44 Advances in the treatment of burn victims have reduced mortality to 2–3% in those without respiratory complications compared with 46% in those with concomitant inhalation injury.45

Burn size is an important predictor of the development of pulmonary complications.46 Smoke inhalation with minimal or no cutaneous burn is associated with chemical tracheobronchitis that does not add significantly to the morbidity and mortality of thermal injury. Patients with an inhalation injury and a medium sized burn often develop significant sequelae of their pulmonary injury which can add up to 20% to the expected mortality.47 The importance of inhalation injury without pulmonary complications is controversial. While some have found that this does not add to mortality, others have reported that inhalation injury increased mortality by 60% when complicated by pneumonia, and by as much as 20% even in the absence of infection.48 It is possible, however, that in some patients without proven pneumonia, inhalation injury produced other complications that adversely affected outcome such as prolonged ventilator dependence, confinement to bed, and atelectasis.

Pathogenesis

Inhalation injuries can produce a wide spectrum of clinical effects. Smoke inhalation is a particularly challenging clinical problem because, apart from thermal injury, patients are often exposed to a large number of inhaled toxins such as pyrolysis products of plastics and other chemicals.35 Death from smoke inhalation may be caused by direct pulmonary injury or asphyxia caused by oxygen deprivation or carbon monoxide exposure. Simple asphyxia may occur during a fire because the ambient oxygen level in a burning room may fall to less than 10%. Older individuals and those with pre-existing lung diseases may be more susceptible to the effects of inhalation injury.49 In individuals with no past history of airway disease, the emergence of significant bronchial hyperreactivity after inhalation injury from irritating agents such as chlorine gas50 is known as reactive airways disease syndrome (RADS).51–52

Irritant gases may produce a variety of clinical problems, including upper airway mucosal irritation and inflammation, laryngospasm, bronchoconstriction, atelectasis, and ARDS. Water solubility plays a key role in determining where inhaled gases deposit in the respiratory tract. Because the respiratory tract is lined with mucus, gases that are highly water soluble such as ammonia, sulphur dioxide, and hydrogen chloride generally cause acute irritant injury to mucous membranes, including the eyes and the lining of the nose and upper airway, and spare the lower respiratory tract. However, high solubility gases are also capable of causing lower tract injury at sufficiently high doses. Less soluble gases such as phosgene, ozone, and nitrogen oxides often have no effect on the upper airway, but they penetrate into the lower airway and irritate the small airways and gas exchange surface.53 Gases of intermediate solubility such as chlorine may exert irritant effects widely throughout the respiratory tract. Furthermore, the particle size and physical properties of inhalation substances determines the site and nature of the injury. Most particles that are smaller than 100 μm can enter the airway. Particles with a diameter of
<10 μm can reach the lower respiratory tract, and those with a diameter of <5 μm can deposit in the terminal bronchi and alveoli. The effect of size is especially important for dusts and aerosols which can contain particles with diameters ranging from 50 μm to less than 1 μm.

Thermal injury is usually limited to the upper airway because of its efficiency as a heat exchanger and the low thermal capacity of air. However, thermal injury to the trachea and bronchi can result following exposure to steam. Chemical injury of the airway can be caused by irritants or cytotoxic chemicals that either adhere to fine particles in smoke or become aerosolised. Injury can occur at all levels of the airway and is typically patchy; even a short exposure to highly reactive irritants can result in loss of cilia and superficial epithelial erosions. Depletion of the free radical scavenger glutathione in the lungs of smoke exposed animals suggests a role for reactive oxygen species (ROS) mediated injury.7 The damage from inhaled irritants can disrupt epithelial cell tight junctions, the influx of inflammatory cells, and leakage of interstitial fluid. Injury to the alveolar-capillary membrane caused by smoke inhalation is primarily mediated by neutrophils.567 Cast formation may occur in small airways causing obstruction and atelectasis which decreases compliance and impairs gas exchange. Diffuse pneumonitis is the most common acute manifestation of injury to the pulmonary parenchyma, with clinical features that include dyspnoea, cough, and hypoxaemia. Although this is usually a self-limited process, more severe injury can lead to ARDS. Chronic sequelae of lower respiratory tract injury include bronchiolitis obliterans, cryptogenic organising pneumonia, and pulmonary fibrosis.58

**Management**

Clinical findings (facial burns, singed nasal vibrissae, or burned eyelashes) and chest radiography, which is often normal initially, are poor predictors of inhalation injury.59 Vital signs and oxygen saturation may also be normal, even after significant inhalation injury. It is prudent to hospitalise patients with a history of significant smoke inhalation for at least 24 hours of observation because complications may not be immediately apparent. Importantly, the presence of stridor indicates significant upper airway oedema and warrants immediate tracheal intubation, since oedema and upper airway narrowing are typically progressive, usually peaking 12–24 hours after injury. Nebulised adrenaline may provide temporary relief but is not a definite treatment and frequent monitoring for evidence of progressive airway compromise must be continued.

Fibreoptic bronchoscopy may help in identifying incipient upper airway obstruction caused by oedema, providing it is carried out in circumstances that allow for securing the airway should the procedure lead to further deterioration.60 Pulmonary toilet may be beneficial if there is significant endobronchial cast formation or if there is excessive carbonaceous material in the lungs.61 However, a normal appearance of the upper airway on bronchoscopic examination does not exclude inhalation injury as distal injury caused by fine particulates which do not precipitate in the large calibre airways can be missed. Combining bronchoscopy with xenon-133 ventilation-perfusion lung scintigraphy, when the bronchoscopic findings are negative or equivocal, provides a highly sensitive means of diagnosing inhalation injury.62

Carbon monoxide poisoning is responsible for approximately 80% of the deaths associated with smoke inhalation.63 The diagnosis is confirmed and the severity of poisoning estimated by measuring the percentage of haemoglobin saturated as carboxyhaemoglobin. Any patient suspected of inhalation injury should therefore receive 100% oxygen via a tight-fitting non-rebreathing mask until carbon monoxide poisoning is excluded and the carboxyhaemoglobin level is less than 10%.

Physical examination of patients suffering from carbon monoxide poisoning typically shows cyanosis, although a cherry red skin colour may be encountered in well ventilated patients. Although hyperbaric oxygen therapy has some proponents, the accompanying risks and the lack of data confirming long term benefit provide no support for its use outside prospective randomised trials.64 Severe airway damage can denude the epithelium and lead to the formation of bloody casts consisting of inspissated mucus and blood clots. Aerosolised heparin (10 000 IU every 6 hours) can reduce the likelihood of endobronchial clot formation and respiratory decompensation.65 In animal models, treatment with heparin alone did not attenuate pulmonary dysfunction after severe smoke injury, but combined treatment with nebulised heparin and systemic lisophylline had beneficial effects on pulmonary function in association with a decrease in blood flow to poorly ventilated areas and less lipid peroxidation.66 Several other new experimental treatments for inhalation injury have shown promise in animal studies or limited human trials. For example, ascorbic acid infusions reduced the severity of respiratory dysfunction in burns patients with inhalation injury.67 Neither prophylactic corticosteroids nor antibiotics are of benefit for smoke inhalation.68 Nevertheless, patients with significant mucosal injury are at high risk for developing pneumonia, in which case antibiotic therapy should be instituted promptly. Corticosteroids should be given to patients with airflow obstruction unresponsive to inhaled bronchodilators. A chest wall eschar can limit gas exchange by restricting chest wall expansion and result in the need for relatively high airway pressures. Chest wall escharotomy which releases this constricting band can be lifesaving.

**LUNG INJURY FOLLOWING LUNG RESECTION**

ARDS is defined as the acute onset of respiratory failure with refractory hypoxaemia (arterial oxygen tension (Pao2)/inspiratory oxygen fraction (FiO2) ratio <200 mm Hg) and bilateral infiltrates on frontal chest radiography that cannot be explained by, but may co-exist with, increased left atrial pressure (occluded pulmonary artery pressure (Ppa) <18 mm Hg).69 ARDS is the extreme manifestation of a spectrum of acute lung injury (ALI) defined identically except for the presence of less severe refractory hypoxaemia (Pao2/FiO2 <300 mm Hg). The extent to which lung resection fulfils this requirement remains controversial as pneumonectomy, by definition, precludes the development of bilateral pulmonary infiltrates. However, most authorities now accept that many patients with what has been termed “post-pneumonectomy pulmonary oedema (PPO)” display the physiological and radiological defining criteria for ALI/ARDS.70

The reported mortality rate for ALI/ARDS associated with thoracotomy and pulmonary resection varies from 2% to 12%.71 72 ALI/ARDS is the commonest cause of death following pulmonary resection,73 74 and the majority die as a result of multiple organ failure.75 The mortality rate remains high despite advances in supportive techniques. Before a consensus definition of ALI/ARDS was agreed, the incidence was reported to vary from 4% to 7% following pneumonectomy and from 1% to 7% after lobectomy, with an associated mortality of 50–100%.75 76 A retrospective study using the consensus definition found an incidence of 2.2%/5.2% for ALI/ARDS following lobectomy and 1.9%/4.9% after pneumonectomy.77 A further study showed an incidence of 6%, 3.7%, and 1% for ALI/ARDS following pneumonectomy, lobectomy, and minor resections, respectively.78 In this latter study ALI/ARDS contributed to 72% of all postoperative deaths.

No correlation has been found between age, preoperative lung function, arterial blood gas analysis, or duration of
surgery and the development of ALI/ARDS. However, men over the age of 60 years, especially when undergoing lung resection for lung cancer, form a high risk group. Furthermore, no correlation has been found between the side of resection and the development of ALI/ARDS, but the risk increases progressively with more extensive resections. ALI may present up to 7 days after surgery, but most patients present between 1 and 3 days postoperatively. Excessive perioperative administration of crystalloid may precipitate respiratory failure, although recently the perceived role of fluid overload has diminished. The high protein content of the alveolar oedema fluid and the frequent delay in presentation suggest that perioperative fluid overload is not the primary cause of post-pulmonary resection lung injury. The differential diagnosis includes lower respiratory tract infection and cardiogenic pulmonary oedema (fig 15.3). Both can be investigated in the intubated patient by tracheal aspiration or bronchoscope guided sampling and pulmonary arterial catheterisation.

Pathogenesis
During pulmonary resection one lung is mechanically ventilated while clamping one lumen of a double lumen endotracheal tube collapses the lung being operated on. Repeated collapse and reinflation occur during the course of thoracotomy as the surgeon carries out the many steps in the operation. These cycles cause ischaemia-reperfusion (IR) injury that are likely to resemble the insult suffered by a transplanted lung. IR injury combined with the oxygen toxicity required to counterbalance the effects of shunt in the deflated lung induce the formation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and reactive nitrogen species (RNS). Similarly, the gas exchange surface in the ventilated lung may be damaged by hyperperfusion, hyperoxia, and overdistension. Clinical observations suggest that injury to the non-operated side may be more important, as shown by a significant increase in density on the CT scan of the non-operated lung in eight out of nine patients following pulmonary resection. Conversely, when the other lung that has been subjected to surgical trauma is re-expanded, IR leads to neutrophil recruitment and activation and the formation of ROS and may cause systemic effects through the return of toxic metabolites to the circulation (fig 15.4).

Under normal circumstances endogenous antioxidants closely regulate redox balance. However, if these defence mechanisms become overwhelmed, high levels of ROS/RNS may directly damage lipids, proteins and DNA, while lower levels affect signal transduction causing a change in cell behaviour without necessarily damaging or killing the cell. ROS have been implicated in the onset and progression of ARDS, both in animal models and clinical studies, in which markers of oxidative damage have been identified. Iron is a catalyst for hydroxyl radical formation, and in patients with ARDS aberrant iron metabolism has been identified. Levels of chelatable redox active iron in bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) fluid are greater in survivors of ARDS than in non-survivors. Paradoxically, non-survivors had increased levels of transferrin and iron binding antioxidant activity. After lobectomy the increase in hydrogen peroxide in exhaled breath condensate was greater than in breath from patients following pneumonectomy. This may be explained by the increased tissue handling and dissection involved in doing a lobectomy compared with a pneumonectomy. Others have reported changes in several markers in the plasma indicating oxidative stress following lung resection (protein thiol, protein carbonyl, and myeloperoxidase levels), but no differences were observed between patients undergoing lobectomy and those undergoing pneumonectomy.

Activated neutrophils in the lungs of patients with ALI produce ROS. However, neutrophil depletion does not attenuate experimental IR mediated lung injury. Following IR in the isolated perfused rat lung model, non-neutrophil derived ROS appear before neutrophil-endothelial cell adhesion and activation occur. In humans an increase in pulmonary vascular permeability persists throughout the course of ARDS and correlates with the severity of lung injury and the neutrophil content of the BAL fluid. Studies in rodents have looked
at the effects of IR on hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction using albumin escape as a marker of endothelial integrity. The integrity of the endothelium was maintained for up to 30 minutes of ischemia alone. If, however, a shorter period of ischemia was followed by reperfusion, the tendency for oedema formation was dramatically increased. This suggests that short periods of ischemia followed by reperfusion may cause as much damage as much longer periods of ischemia alone.

**CONCLUSION**

Thoracic trauma and inhalation injury are common causes of respiratory failure and critical illness often in young patients who have a good prognosis if the initial insult is survivable. Blunt thoracic trauma can produce a spectrum of injuries including rib fractures, pneumothorax, flail segments and pulmonary contusion, all of which can impair pulmonary function. Inhalation injury can be both thermal and/or chemical, and predisposes burn patients to pneumonia, respiratory failure, and death. ALI/ARDS is the most common cause of death following pulmonary resection, the pathogenesis of which results from IR injury. The mortality rate remains high despite advances in supportive techniques.

Despite the disparate nature of these conditions, common themes emerge in the supportive management of such patients. For example, atelectasis and spumt retention follow all major pulmonary trauma, including surgery, as a consequence of impaired cough and shallow respiration caused by pain and weakness. The tendency to develop respiratory failure and pneumonia may be minimised by adequate pain relief, mobilisation, and physiotherapy. Intermittent non-invasive ventilatory support and tracheal aspiration facilitated by a nasopharyngeal airway or a mini-tracheostomy may be required to help a patient with an inadequate cough. These conditions are best managed by a multidisciplinary approach.

**REFERENCES**

Thoracic trauma, inhalation injury and post-pulmonary resection lung injury in intensive care


CASE REPORT

A 26 year old man was admitted to the intensive care unit (ICU) on two occasions. Cystic fibrosis (CF) had been diagnosed at 2 months when he was failing to thrive and he was subsequently found to be homozygous for the ΔF508 mutation. At 19 years of age his respiratory tract secretions were colonised by *Burkholderia cepacia*. He had recurrent pneumothoraces requiring two surgical pleurodeses. Immediately before his ICU admissions his forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV₁) was 31% predicted. He had pancreatic insufficiency at the time of diagnosis and developed diabetes at the age of 23. He also had CF related liver disease, portal hypertension, and oesophageal varices.

He was admitted to the CF centre with a history of increased breathlessness and sputum production with haemoptysis. Intravenous antibiotics were commenced. *Staphylococcus aureus* and *B. cepacia* were cultured in the sputum. On the night after admission he had a massive haematemesis requiring resuscitation, endotracheal intubation, and transfer to the ICU. An emergency endoscopy identified bleeding oesophageal varices that were banded. Bronchoscopic examination showed aspirated blood throughout the bronchial tree. He was successfully weaned from mechanical ventilation and transferred back to a high dependency area. The subsequent inpatient stay was complicated by decompensation of his liver disease and ascites. He also developed *B. cepacia* septicaemia and was eventually allowed to go home almost 1 month after discharge from the ICU.

Three weeks after discharge from the CF centre he presented to his local hospital with haematemesis. After a further episode of haemorrhage, an endotracheal tube and subsequently a Sengstaken-Blakemore tube were inserted. Endoscopy the following day did not suggest variceal haemorrhage, but a bronchoscopy showed blood predominantly in the right bronchial tree. He required a massive blood transfusion and was transferred back to the ICU at the CF centre. Bronchial angiography demonstrated abnormal bronchial arteries in the right upper lobe and some abnormal vessels in the left lower lobe, which were embolised. After a failed extubation, a percutaneous tracheostomy was inserted. He continued to have episodes of haemoptysis and developed worsening ascites that compromised diaphragmatic function. The ascites did not improve with conservative management and was drained on two occasions. Hypernatraemia developed probably as a result of a sodium containing elemental feed, intravenous antibiotics, and hyperaldosteronism associated with liver disease. A change to a low sodium non-elemental feed in combination with pancreatic enzymes corrected the hypernatraemia. He subsequently developed *B. cepacia* septicaemia and the intravenous antibiotics were changed based on new sensitivities. Gradual weaning from pressure support ventilation was achieved and he was breathing spontaneously via a tracheostomy 29 days after admission. He was transferred to the respiratory ward on day 28 and discharged home 18 days later. He died suddenly after only 12 days at home following what was thought to be a massive haematemesis.

MANAGEMENT OF CF PATIENTS IN THE ICU

Most critically ill patients with CF have end stage disease and intensive care is not considered; however, when the possibility of intensive care arises for individual patients it is often difficult to determine whether this is appropriate. When a patient with CF is admitted to the ICU a number of specialist issues arise—such as the management of haemoptysis, the treatment of infective exacerbations, and nutritional support—which will be discussed below. Close liaison between the CF and ICU teams is required. Non-invasive ventilation of patients with CF has been found to be highly effective, but does not usually occur in the ICU in the UK and will not be discussed extensively here.

Selecting CF patients for ICU care

The selection of patients with CF who are suitable for admission to the ICU is not easy, partly because there are relatively few published data on which to base the decision. One retrospective multicentre study published in 1978 examined the outcomes of 136 admissions of four mechanically ventilated patients under 1 year of age.³ All were successfully weaned from mechanical ventilation and discharged home, and were alive 2–6 years later.

Two more recent studies, one in the USA⁴ and one in the UK,⁴ have reached somewhat different conclusions. This is partly related to differences in approach and differences in the definition of “survivors”.

The US study⁴ examined the outcomes of 76 adult patients with CF admitted to an ICU at a CF and transplant centre. The difference between UK and USA practice is exemplified by the observation that, of a total of 136 admissions, only 32 episodes required endotracheal intubation and 30 were admitted for antibiotic desensitisation. Thirty three episodes were precipitated by massive haemoptysis and 11 of these patients (73%) were alive 1 year after discharge from the ICU. The authors did not state whether any of these patients required endotracheal intubation, but this seems unlikely as all of the intubation episodes appear to be accounted for by infective exacerbations. There were a total of 65 admissions requiring resuscitation, endotracheal intubation, and transfer to the ICU. An emergency endoscopy identified bleeding oesophageal varices that were banded. Bronchoscopic examination showed aspirated blood throughout the bronchial tree. He was successfully weaned from mechanical ventilation and transferred back to a high dependency area. The subsequent inpatient stay was complicated by decompensation of his liver disease and ascites. He also developed *B. cepacia* septicaemia and was eventually allowed to go home almost 1 month after discharge from the ICU.

Three weeks after discharge from the CF centre he presented to his local hospital with haematemesis. After a further episode of haemorrhage, an endotracheal tube and subsequently a Sengstaken-Blakemore tube were inserted. Endoscopy the following day did not suggest variceal haemorrhage, but a bronchoscopy showed blood predominantly in the right bronchial tree. He required a massive blood transfusion and was transferred back to the ICU at the CF centre. Bronchial angiography demonstrated abnormal bronchial arteries in the right upper lobe and some abnormal vessels in the left lower lobe, which were embolised. After a failed extubation, a percutaneous tracheostomy was inserted. He continued to have episodes of haemoptysis and developed worsening ascites that compromised diaphragmatic function. The ascites did not improve with conservative management and was drained on two occasions. Hypernatraemia developed probably as a result of a sodium containing elemental feed, intravenous antibiotics, and hyperaldosteronism associated with liver disease. A change to a low sodium non-elemental feed in combination with pancreatic enzymes corrected the hypernatraemia. He subsequently developed *B. cepacia* septicaemia and the intravenous antibiotics were changed based on new sensitivities. Gradual weaning from pressure support ventilation was achieved and he was breathing spontaneously via a tracheostomy 29 days after admission. He was transferred to the respiratory ward on day 28 and discharged home 18 days later. He died suddenly after only 12 days at home following what was thought to be a massive haematemesis.
for infective exacerbations, 32 of which required endotracheal intubation. A total of 71% of the respiratory failure episodes resulted in survival to ICU discharge. This included 15 episodes that did not require any ventilatory support and 18 episodes that required non-invasive ventilation only. Twenty (62%) of the patients who received endotracheal intubation survived to be discharged from the ICU. Two patients were alive without transplantation 1 year after discharge and 10 had successful transplants. Although 17 subjects who were admitted with respiratory failure received transplants and 14 were alive 1 year later, the proportion of the patients who were transplanted from the ventilator and were alive 1 year later was not stated.

The UK study examined the outcomes of 31 patients with CF admitted over 8 years to the ICU who required endotracheal intubation. In the UK most patients in the ICU require endotracheal intubation, and restrictions on bed availability mean that other patients are cared for in high dependency units or elsewhere. The patients were divided into two groups. The first group included 12 patients admitted on 13 occasions for respiratory failure, either due to aspiration of blood (three episodes) or infective exacerbations. Five subjects (38%) survived to hospital discharge, a figure similar to the American study described above, but only two patients (16%) survived beyond 6 months. The second group included 16 patients admitted to the ICU after surgical procedures on 18 occasions, which followed surgical pleurodesis. Fourteen of the subjects survived to hospital discharge and 11 (65%) survived beyond 6 months.

What conclusions can be drawn from these studies? It would appear that outcomes are good in infants requiring mechanical ventilation because of respiratory failure and in patients requiring ventilation after surgical pleurodesis. The outcome in patients admitted to the ICU after massive haemoptysis and haematemesis also appears relatively good. The outcome in the patients in the US study also appeared favourable with the majority alive at 1 year, although (as mentioned above) it appears that these subjects did not require endotracheal intubation. Although the outcomes of patients with infective exacerbations in the US study appeared favourable, the population studied was different from that in the UK study in that only a minority required endotracheal intubation. In addition, many of the patients receiving mechanical ventilation subsequently had lung transplants, whereas none of the UK patients who were intubated were transplanted. Both the recent UK and US studies found that FEV₁ was not predictive of survival.

The role of transplantation for endotracheally intubated patients remains controversial. Although one study has documented a 1 year survival rate of 50% in 10 patients who received mechanical ventilation for up to 42 days, many centres do not consider these patients for transplantation. At the Royal Brompton and Harefield Hospitals only two of five patients who had been intubated and mechanically ventilated survived transplantation, and both survivors were ventilated for less than 24 hours preoperatively. The poorer outcome of ventilated patients receiving transplants coupled with severely restricted organ availability discourages transplantation in this group. The different ways in which centres prioritise patients for transplantation will also influence whether organs will become available within a reasonable time scale for ventilated patients. In contrast, non-invasive ventilation is well established as a bridging technique to transplantation.

There are probably many reasons for the poor outcome from invasive ventilation in these patients. They usually have severe pre-existing pulmonary disease and may also have associated liver disease. Even with optimal physiotherapy, sputum clearance will be less effective than in a conscious patient who is able to cough effectively and cooperate with physiotherapy.

Reversible factors need to be identified before deciding to intubate and ventilate a patient with CF, and those with end stage disease should not normally receive this form of support. The relative lack of published evidence makes it difficult to make decisions for individual patients and, where possible, both the patient and the family need to be involved in the decision making process. It is only rarely appropriate to ventilate patients with CF who develop respiratory failure, and this is well illustrated by the experience at the Royal Brompton Hospital where only 16 such episodes have occurred over an 8 year period.

**Management of massive haemoptysis**

Guidelines have been published for the management of massive haemoptysis (>240 ml/day). Medical treatment includes the correction of coagulation defects with vitamin K and fresh frozen plasma. An infective exacerbation is often a precipitant and intravenous antibiotics should be commenced. The affected lung should be kept dependent in an attempt to avoid contamination of the other lung. There is case report evidence for the use of tranexamic acid. An attempt should be made to localise the site of bleeding. This can be achieved in a number of ways. Many patients experience a sensation of gurgling in a particular part of the chest and a recent study has shown that this is a reliable guide. The chest radiograph may also show unilateral air space shadowing. If doubt remains, bronchoscopy should be performed. Bronchial embolisation is effective in a low risk of complications that include chest pain, dysphagia, bronchial necrosis, bowel ischaemia, and, very rarely, paraplegia.

**Management of infective exacerbations**

Antibiotics should be selected based on the most recent sputum culture. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is usually treated with an aminoglycoside in combination with another antipseudomonal antibiotic. Combination therapy is thought to reduce the risk of emergence of resistance. Although a recent study has suggested that monotherapy with tobramycin is effective, it cannot be recommended in the ICU setting. The choice of antipseudomonal antibiotic includes carbapenems such as meropenem, carbapenem antibiotics such as ticarcillin, ursipenicillins such as azlocillin, or third generation cephalosporins such as cefazidime. Piperacillin appears to be associated with febrile reactions in patients with CF and should be avoided. Once daily tobramycin does appear to be effective in patients with CF, but this conclusion is based on a small study and confirmation is required. *Burkholderia cepacia* is usually multiresistant but may be sensitive to chloramphenicol, cotrimoxazole, cefazidime, temocillin, or meropenem. If the pulmonary pathogen is unknown, antipseudomonal antibiotics should always be given in conjunction with an antistaphylococcal antibiotic such as flucloxacillin. Aminoglycosides have a higher volume of distribution in CF patients than in non-CF individuals so a higher dose is usually required. Monitoring of aminoglycoside drug levels is essential.

Regular physiotherapy is crucial in these patients as they are unable to clear their secretions spontaneously. Whether toilet bronchoscopy is better than blind endobronchial suction is unknown, but inspection of the bronchi and suction is used when ventilatory problems arise and sputum plugging is suspected.

The role of recombinant human deoxyribonuclease (DNase) is uncertain in ventilated patients. In patients with CF it reduces the frequency of infective exacerbations and has been shown to be safe and effective in those with severe disease. However, efficacy is thought to be dependent upon effective sputum clearance which is more difficult in the ventilated patient. The effect of DNase on sputum clearance in ventilated patients has not been studied directly but, when a patient has been receiving DNase before admission to the ICU, it is generally continued.
Tracheostomies and weaning

Weaning patients with CF from mechanical ventilation is frequently prolonged and tracheostomies are often used to facilitate this process. A percutaneous rather than a surgical technique may be preferred for convenience and a lower incidence of complications. There is limited experience in the use of percutaneous tracheostomies in patients with CF, and it is unknown whether the infected bronchial secretions in these patients predispose to a higher incidence of postoperative infections.

Non-invasive ventilation

As described above, invasive ventilation is associated with poor outcomes. Non-invasive ventilation has therefore been investigated as an alternative and has been shown to be effective in selected cases. It may also be used to facilitate weaning from mechanical ventilation.

Gastrointestinal pathology and liver disease

Early nutritional support should be commenced. An elemental feed may be used or, alternatively, a standard feed with pancreatic enzyme supplementation. In those with liver disease a feed with a low sodium content should be used to avoid hypernatraemia.

Patients with CF who are acutely unwell, especially after surgery, are at risk of developing the distal intestinal obstruction syndrome (DIOS); fever, dehydration, and opioid analgesia may all contribute. Preventative strategies include the avoidance of dehydration, continued use of pancreatic enzyme supplementation, use of lactulose, and a carefully considered approach to the use of opioids. Treatment options include nasogastric or rectal N-acetyl cysteine, Gastrografin enemas, and intestinal lavage with a balanced electrolyte solution containing polyethylene glycol. Surgery can usually be avoided.

The incidence of liver disease in patients with CF depends on how it is defined, but it may occur in 25% of subjects and symptomatic liver disease occurs in less than 5% of cases. Many patients with CF have a small increase in the liver isoenzyme of alkaline phosphatase and γ-glutamyltranspeptidase but, if these enzymes are raised to more than four times normal, then liver disease is usually present. The presence of liver disease undoubtedly increases the risk of complications occurring during an ICU admission because of an increased risk of bleeding due to thrombocytopenia and coagulopathy. Oesophageal varices may be present. Care should be taken with the use of drugs that are metabolised by the liver or excreted in the bile. Ascites may cause diaphragmatic splinting and may need to be drained to facilitate ventilation.

Diabetes

A significant proportion of patients have CF related diabetes (CFRD). The prevalence appears to increase with age and one study has reported a prevalence of about 15%. Tight control of blood glucose levels is associated with improved survival in critically ill non-CF patients.

CONCLUSION

Intensive care is only appropriate for a small number of patients with CF with reversible complications of their disease. Limited evidence is available to help in deciding which patients should be selected for support of organ failures in the ICU and how such patients should be managed. There is a need for more research in this area. A summary of some of the problems that may be experienced is given in table 16.1.

---

### Table 16.1 Common cystic fibrosis related pathologies, complications and principal elements of management in intensive care (for details see text)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CF related pathology</th>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lung disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacterial colonisation of airways</td>
<td>Infected exacerbations</td>
<td>• Antibiotics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Physiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• DNase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiresistant pathogens</td>
<td>Antibiotics selected according to</td>
<td>• Endobronchial suction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sensitivities</td>
<td>• Bronchoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sputum plugging</td>
<td></td>
<td>• DNase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Bronchodilators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstructive lung disease</td>
<td>Difficult ventilation</td>
<td>• Tracheostomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prolonged weaning</td>
<td>• NIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Haemoptysis</td>
<td>• Tranexamic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal disease</td>
<td>Pancreatic insufficiency</td>
<td>• Bronchial artery embolisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distal intestinal obstruction syndrome</td>
<td>Elemental feed</td>
<td>• Maintain good hydration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lactulose</td>
<td>• N-acetyl cysteine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>γ-glutamyltranspeptidase</td>
<td>• Gastrografin enema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver disease</td>
<td>Coagulopathy</td>
<td>• Vitamin K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thrombocytopenia</td>
<td>• Fresh frozen plasma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Altered drug metabolism</td>
<td>• Platelet transfusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Variceal haemorrhage</td>
<td>• Careful drug prescribing practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td>Hyperglycaemia</td>
<td>• Variceal banding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Sinusitis</td>
<td>• Intravenous insulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF upper airway disease</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Avoid nasal intubation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Antibiotics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

108 Respiratory Management in Critical Care
Where possible, severely ill CF patients should be transferred to their CF specialist centre and this will facilitate optimal treatment of their multisystem disease. It is also easier for decisions about continuation of treatment to be made where pre-existing trusting relationships have developed between patients, their relatives, and their clinicians.

REFERENCES

CASE REPORT

A 31 year old man with a 5 month history of Jo-1 negative dermatomyositis was admitted to the intensive care unit (ICU) with respiratory failure. Five months previously he had developed severe myositis which responded to corticosteroid treatment (prednisolone 1 mg/kg) with symptomatic improvement and a fall in creatine kinase. Six weeks later he developed chest radiographic infiltrates, extensive ground glass opacification on high resolution computed tomographic (HRCT) scanning (fig 17.1), and hypoxaemic respiratory failure despite maintenance treatment with prednisolone 20 mg daily. He deteriorated despite antimicrobial and increased corticosteroid treatment, requiring mechanical ventilation. A thoracoscopic biopsy specimen taken while on the ventilator disclosed diffuse alveolar damage admixed with organising pneumonia. Intravenous methylprednisolone (750 mg daily for 3 days) allowed weaning from ventilatory support and eventual discharge from hospital on prednisolone (0.5 mg/kg) and azathioprine (200 mg once daily). One month later he was readmitted with increasing dyspnoea and was treated for cytomegalovirus (CMV) pneumonitis diagnosed on the basis of a positive urinary detection of early antigen fluorescence foci (DEAFF) test and bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) immunofluorescence. After a good initial response, progression of interstitial lung disease became evident radiologically and a single dose of intravenous cyclophosphamide (1.4 g) was administered.

One week later he developed increasing dyspnoea associated with increasing oxygen requirements and a low grade fever, but there were no major changes in chest radiographic abnormalities or inflammatory indices which were only mildly increased. Broad spectrum antibiotic treatment was instituted with cotrimoxazole to cover pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP) and intravenous ganciclovir to cover recrudescence of CMV pneumonitis. However, all cultures, including specific testing for CMV antigen, were negative. Continued deterioration prompted transfer to the ICU 48 hours after admission.

Examination of bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) samples revealed no evidence of infection. Having failed to identify an infective agent and in the presence of broad spectrum antimicrobial treatment, the patient’s continued decline was treated with three further daily doses of intravenous methylprednisolone and a further dose of intravenous cyclophosphamide. The transplantation investigation protocol was initiated and cyclosporin was added in the hope of decreasing steroid requirements. However, intermittent non-invasive support was increasingly necessary and tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation were required 7 days after admission to the ICU. Despite vasopressor support, adjustment of antimicrobial treatment (including the empirical addition of liposomal amphotericin), and the use of granulocyte colony stimulating factor to treat pancytopenia, he continued to deteriorate and died 30 days after admission to the ICU. No clear evidence of underlying infection was obtained. Overall, the balance of probability strongly favoured inexorable progression of underlying interstitial lung disease.

MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH DIFFUSE INTERSTITIAL LUNG DISEASE IN THE ICU

Use of diagnostic techniques

This case illustrates important management difficulties in patients with diffuse interstitial lung disease (DILD) who progress to respiratory failure. Clinically, the differential diagnosis usually consists of deterioration of the underlying disease demanding increased immunosuppression, and infection requiring antimicrobial treatment and a reduction in immunosuppressive treatment. The distinction is important, whatever the likely outcome. Young patients with connective tissue disease may have an excellent long term outcome if they survive an acute episode—be it infective or due to inflammatory DILD—and prolonged aggressive intervention is appropriate. By contrast, major progression of fibrotic disease generally denotes a very poor outcome once mechanical ventilation has been instituted in idiopathic and connective tissue disease alike; prolonged ventilation is inappropriate.

Unfortunately, in most connective tissue diseases and other forms of DILD no serological marker correlates closely with pulmonary disease activity. The distinction between the onset of infection and progression of disease is complicated by the marked similarities in clinical presentation (fever, cough, increased breathlessness, and increased radiographic shadowing). Similarly, laboratory indices of infection (white blood cell count, erythrocyte sedimentation rate, C reactive protein) lack sensitivity or specificity as all may be influenced by the underlying pulmonary inflammation or systemic disease activity. The development of organ dysfunction or nosocomial infection in patients requiring intensive care may add to the diagnostic difficulties. Ideal markers that distinguish between infection and inflammation in patients requiring critical care and in those with autoimmunity disease are not yet available for routine clinical use.

Chest radiography is often unhelpful in discriminating between infection and progression of DILD in patients requiring critical care. HRCT scanning is central to the diagnosis and management of DILD and is a safe means of obtaining clinical and physiological information in critically ill patients. It may be diagnostic in advanced DILD, obviating the need for invasive investigation. When it is inconclusive diagnostically, CT may define the optimal site for surgical biopsy. However, although fairly accurate in the exclusion of ventilator associated pneumonia in
Illustrative case 2: interstitial lung disease

ARDS, CT scanning has not been evaluated as a diagnostic test for opportunistic infection in the ventilated patient with DILD. As illustrated by the present case, the interpretation of ground glass opacification on the CT scan is not always straightforward, especially in connective tissue diseases where opportunistic infection may coexist with a number of primary pulmonary disease processes. In this setting, invasive or semi-invasive investigation is often required. In the present case there was a compelling need to define the underlying interstitial lung disease and an immediate diagnostic surgical lung biopsy (SLB) was performed, obviating semi-invasive less definitive procedures. However, in cases in which the underlying diagnosis is known and the problem is one of distinguishing between infection and disease progression, a more calibrated approach is usually appropriate including BAL and transbronchial biopsy (TBB) before SLB (Fig 17.2).

In a case where pulmonary infiltrates are associated with immunosuppressive therapy, BAL makes a crucial contribution to the detection of opportunistic infection. The spectrum of likely infective organisms depends on a variety of factors including the presence of neutropenia, the nature of the underlying disease process and immunosuppressive therapy, the prior administration of antimicrobial treatment, and the timing of the BAL relative to hospital admission and the onset of ventilation. Bacterial pathogens are isolated most commonly, but staining and cultures should be undertaken to exclude fungal, mycobacterial, and viral infections. In addition, non-infectious causes of diffuse radiographic shadowing including malignancy and alveolar haemorrhage may be identified. New diagnostic techniques applicable to BAL fluid include antigen detection (e.g. Aspergillus spp, Cryptococcus neoformans, Legionella pneumophila), antibody detection (e.g. antipneumolysin for pneumococcal pneumonia), special methods for culture (BACTEC radiometric culture for mycobacteria), and techniques from molecular biology such as the polymerise chain reaction. However, the appropriate use of new diagnostic tests is often difficult to rationalise; their clinical usefulness is likely to be heavily dependent upon the quality of specimen, BAL technique, and population studied. It is advisable for clinicians to seek microbiological advice before performing BAL if the use of novel diagnostic procedures is contemplated.

BAL is generally safe in immunosuppressed patients including those with haematological dysfunction and in critically ill patients requiring mechanical ventilation. However, deterioration in respiratory mechanics and gas exchange is well recognised and may be clinically significant. Thus, BAL should be performed in the ICU in high risk patients; occasionally it is appropriate to institute mechanical ventilation before BAL is undertaken.

The diagnosis of CMV pneumonitis was unexpected but illustrates the diagnostic usefulness of BAL. CMV pneumonitis is probably rare outside transplant patients and those infected with HIV. In patients infected with HIV the clinical significance of positive CMV serological testing is uncertain. There are few data in other patient groups but CMV pneumonitis is associated with a high rate of mortality (>80%) if treatment is delayed. Serological evidence of previous CMV infection is common in adults, especially after the age of 40. As CMV pneumonitis typically presents with fever, dyspnoea and diffuse infiltrates on the chest radiograph, it may be very difficult to make the crucial distinction between infection and progression of disease. Diagnostic viral cytopathic changes in TBB or open lung biopsy specimens tend to occur in advanced infection by which time antiviral treatment may be less efficacious, reinforcing continued interest in non-invasive techniques that promise rapid diagnosis.

The added value of TBB in patients undergoing BAL remains contentious. In a retrospective study of immunosuppressed patients TBB was more sensitive than BAL (77% v 48%...
in HIV disease, 55% v 20% in haematological malignancy, 57% v 27% in renal transplant recipients) and there were few serious complications.13 In patients with HIV infection it has been argued that a negative BAL result should prompt repeat BAL with TBB at the most abnormal site; this approach has a diagnostic yield of 90% for nodules or focal infiltrates.13 In a retrospective study of mechanically ventilated patients, TBB was diagnostic in 35% of cases and led to a change in management in 60% of “medical” patients and in 25% of patients following lung transplantation.14 The frequency of pneumothorax was higher (10.4%) than is generally reported in non-ventilated subjects (5%), but there were no serious complications. At subsequent open lung biopsy or necroscopic examination there was a concordance of 85% with TBB findings. The authors argue that TBB is safe in mechanically ventilated patients with undiagnosed pulmonary infiltrates and may obviate the need for SLB.

When BAL and TBB are non-diagnostic, SLB may be warranted. Although widely accepted in DILD in general,11 the role of SLB has been questioned in ventilated subjects because of a perception of higher risk and reduced benefit in critically ill patients. However, it can be argued that diagnostic accuracy in this patient group (which is central to confident management) justifies the increased incidence of perioperative complications. The diagnostic yield of SLB in ventilated patients has varied from 46% to 100%,13–18 but the influence of diagnosis on management is not always easy to quantify. In one study the attainment of a definitive diagnosis resulted in continuation of existing treatment in 33% of patients, increased immunosuppression in 26%, initiation of immunosuppression in 22%, and a change in antimicrobial treatment in 19%.19 In ventilated patients the mortality rate with SLB may be as high as 10% and operative complications, occurring in approximately 20%, may influence survival.12–14 However, mortality after the initial postoperative period is probably largely attributable to progression of the underlying condition rather than to the surgical procedure, although controlled clinical data are lacking. Factors predicting mortality in ventilated patients with pulmonary infiltrates undergoing SLB have included an immunocompromised status at the onset of respiratory failure or current immunosuppressive treatment, severe hypoxia, multiorgan failure, and older age.12–14

In immunocompromised patients in the ICU, high inpatient and 1-year mortality rates (50% and 90%, respectively) are often cited to suggest that SLB adds little to the management provided that broad spectrum antibiotic cover (including cotrimoxazole to cover PCP) and a trial of corticosteroid treatment are instituted.12 However, “patient benefit” is not always synonymous with eventual survival. Inappropriate immunosuppressive therapy may be associated with infective complications. SLB may identify irreversible disease, allowing inappropriate support to be minimised14 and withdrawal of care issues to be discussed definitively with the relatives.15–18

Finally, immuno compromised patients with underlying DILD can be viewed as “special cases” with regard to the performance of SLB because of the unique difficulties in distinguishing between infection and progression of the primary disease.

Role of lung transplantation
Mechanical ventilation is widely regarded as a strong relative contraindication to lung transplantation because of the high risk of pneumonia due to airway microbial colonisation, severe muscular deconditioning due to immobility, and other complications such as sepsis, deep venous thrombosis, gastrointestinal haemorrhage, altered gut motility, and nutritional problems.19 The International Society of Heart Lung Transplantation/United Network for Organ Sharing has documented a threefold increase in 1-year mortality in mechanically ventilated patients compared with those who are non-ventilated.18 However, in small populations from selected centres, outcomes have been similar to those in non-ventilated recipients. In a recent report of 21 patients who were transplanted while being mechanically ventilated, six developed acute allograft dysfunction and all died within a year with three not surviving the postoperative period.10 However, there were no postoperative deaths among the remaining 15 patients and their long-term survival (40%) did not differ from non-ventilated patients undergoing transplantation. Thus, mechanical ventilation should not be viewed as an absolute contraindication to transplantation. In our patient the factors favouring attempted transplantation included his age, relatively brief history (minimising severe muscular deconditioning), and the lack of evidence of relentless systemic disease activity.

Non-invasive ventilation decreases the need for tracheal intubation and increases the likelihood of successful weaning from mechanical ventilation, both resulting in a lower incidence of nosocomial infection.6 The successful use of non-invasive ventilation as a bridge to transplantation in patients developing respiratory failure has been reported.20–22 In view of the general scarcity of donor organs, the indications for transplantation in patients receiving mechanical ventilation are necessarily imprecise and controversial. Decisions should not be subject to generic guidelines but must be individualised, taking into account such factors as the presence of reversible superimposed processes (with a realistic chance of bridging to surgery with treatment) and the likelihood of expeditious transplantation. Immediate transplantation during an acute episode is seldom practicable.

CONCLUSION
In patients with interstitial lung disease who deteriorate to respiratory failure, the distinction between infection and progression of disease is often difficult and sometimes, as in the presented case, the two may coexist. Accurate management requires BAL which is best performed in the ICU in those with borderline respiratory failure; TBB may be a useful adjunct. In selected cases SLB may be invaluable both diagnostically and as an aid to confident management. Although seldom justifiable, transplantation of a ventilated patient is not absolutely contraindicated, especially in young non-deconditioned patients.

REFERENCES
Illustrative case 2: interstitial lung disease

CASE REPORT

A 28 year old man was admitted from a local hospital to the intensive care unit (ICU) at Hammer smith Hospital via the operating theatre. He had presented with a 3 month history of nasal stuffiness, epistaxis and haemoptysis, and had recently noticed increasing shortness of breath. He had lost 6 kg in weight and reported night sweats. His initial chest radiograph showed diffuse peripheral shadowing and a subsequent computed tomographic (CT) scan confirmed the presence of multiple infiltrative lesions (fig 18.1). Bronchoscopy showed evidence of recent diffuse haemorrhage; bronchoalveolar lavage cytology revealed an eosinophilia but was negative for acid fast bacilli, legionella, and fungi. Over the next few days he deteriorated, requiring endotracheal intubation and ventilation. He was transferred for an open lung biopsy. Lung histology was non-specific showing diffuse alveolar haemorrhage with fibrin deposition, fibroblastic proliferation, and a predominantly neutrophilic inflammatory infiltrate. Following the lung biopsy the patient was admitted to the ICU with severe hypoxaemic respiratory failure.

The patient had no significant past medical history. He was born in India and raised in the UK; his last visit abroad was to India 2 years before admission. He was a sales manager for a building company and did not smoke. On admission to ICU he was pyrexial at 38°C. He was paralysed and ventilated requiring 95% oxygen. There were no rashes, eyes and joints were normal, but he was noted to have a slight crusting of his nares. The blood pressure was 114/54 mm Hg supported by noradrenaline and doxapram infusions. Clinical biochemistry results were: C reactive protein (neutrophil leucocytosis), platelets 324 × 10^9/l, bilirubin 8 mg/l, Na 135 mmol/l, K 4.3 mmol/l, urea 23 mg/l, creatinine 5.2 mmol/l, albumin 16 g/l, ionised calcium 1.88 mmol/l, bilirubin 8 mmol/l, alkaline phosphatase 134 U/l (normal range 30–130), and alanine aminotransferase 76 U/l (0–31). The blood film showed a leucoerythroblastic picture; the counts were haemoglobin 7.5 g/dl, mean cell volume 89 fl, white cell count 15 × 10^9/l (neutrophil leucocytosis), platelets 324 × 10^9/l. Urine microscopy showed multiple red cell casts. Urgent ANCA (antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies) immunofluorescence was strongly positive for C-ANCA; anti-PR3 ELISA was also strongly positive at 89% (0–15%). This confirmed the clinical diagnosis of Wegener’s granulomatosis and treatment was initiated with prednisolone and cyclophosphamide. In view of the severity of his lung haemorrhage he underwent five episodes of plasma exchange. His renal function deteriorated over 6 days and he required continuous renal replacement therapy for fluid balance and metabolic control. The aetiology of the renal failure was multifactorial with sepsis and nephritis contributing. As he was receiving heavy immunosuppression, he was given anti-infective prophylaxis with co-trimoxazole, fluconazole, and isoniazid. In order to minimise further lung haemorrhage, his intravascular volume was kept as low as possible by tightly controlling fluid balance. He sustained one episode of line sepsis treated with vancomycin. He required high concentrations of oxygen (FiO₂ >0.5) for 10 days and then his condition gradually improved; a tracheostomy was performed and his trachea was ultimately decannulated 15 days after ICU admission. His renal function recovered and he was discharged from hospital 46 days after admission with a creatinine level of 86 mmol/l. His pulmonary function was clinically good and was not assessed formally.

DISCUSSION

Presentation and diagnosis

This case illustrates the importance of the aggressive pursuit and treatment of the cause of acute respiratory failure. The history in this case provided important clues, but in some cases of acute severe respiratory failure a clinical picture of hypoxaemic respiratory failure with non-specific changes on the chest radiograph is all that is available on presentation to the ICU. The initial differential diagnosis is wide and includes most obviously infective agents, but also interstitial lung disease and vasculitis. High resolution CT scanning can be helpful but, unless it is performed in held, static inspiration with arms out of the field, can be misleading. Serological tests are extremely valuable but may not be rapidly available.

Systemic vasculitis is characteristically a multifocal disease with a variety of clinical manifestations according to the size of the blood vessel involved and the organs affected. It is classified according to the size of the smallest vessel involved.^1^ Alveolar haemorrhage results from small vessel vasculitides involving the lungs; these include Wegener’s granulomatosis, microscopic polyangiitis and, rarely, Churg-Strauss syndrome. They can present at any age but occur most commonly in patients in their 50s and 60s and there is a slight male predominance. ^2,^3 There are reports of vasculitis occurring in families,^4,^5 but most cases arise sporadically and, unlike most autoimmune diseases, so far no consistent HLA associations have been identified,^6^ although there are associations with certain complement alleles and alleles of α-antitrypsin. ^7,^8 Environmental factors such as silica exposure,^9,^10 drugs,^11,^12 and infections^13–15^ may play a part; however, although these may be important in elucidating the pathogenesis of vasculitis, in practice most cases have no obvious genetic or environmental precipitant. As can be seen from this case presentation, prompt diagnosis of vasculitis is vital, not only to instigate appropriate treatment but also to avoid unnecessary invasive diagnostic procedures. In retrospect, the previously arranged open lung biopsy in this case was probably not required and was precipitated by the deteriorating state of the patient and the need to secure a diagnosis. The

18 Illustrative case 3: pulmonary vasculitis

ME Griffith, S Brett
where operators are familiar with their interpretation. Although they are often only available in specialist centres.

CT scan of a ventilated patient with pulmonary vasculitis. Scattered dense airspace shadowing can be seen with some background ground glass shadowing. Small effusions are also visible. Courtesy of Dr Jeremy Levy.

Illustrative case 3: pulmonary vasculitis

Diffuse alveolar haemorrhage may result in pulmonary fibrosis. Repeated episodes of lung haemorrhage result in interstitial oedema and diffuse alveolar haemorrhage. This results in interstitial oedema and diffuse alveolar haemorrhage. Repeated episodes of lung haemorrhage may result in pulmonary fibrosis. Other symptoms include dyspnoea, fever, and weight loss. Patients are anaemic, hypoaemic, and have diffuse infiltrative shadowing on the chest radiograph. Alveolar haemorrhage can sometimes be confirmed on bronchoscopy, with haemosiderin-laden macrophages seen on cytological examination of lavage fluid. However, patients may be too hypoxic to undergo this procedure. Carbon monoxide transfer coefficient corrected for lung volume (Kco) will be raised. In the ITU patients are often ventilated, and methods of measuring Kco in ventilated patients have been reported and validated, although they are often only available in specialist centres where operators are familiar with their interpretation. A CT scan of the chest is often unhelpful in determining the actiology of alveolar haemorrhage, although it may reveal cavitating lesions typical of granulomatous infiltration. Lung biopsies frequently demonstrate necrotic tissue or show non-specific inflammation and haemorrhage, particularly if obtained via the transbronchial route, but the yield can be improved by open lung biopsy. If there is evidence of renal involvement a renal biopsy is more likely to be diagnostic and will usually show a focal necrotising glomerulonephritis.

 Patients with vasculitis may present with isolated pulmonary haemorrhage, but usually there is also systemic involvement. Most patients with Wegener’s granulomatosis have granulomatous lesions in the upper respiratory tract which result in chronic sinusitis, epistaxis, chronic otitis media, and deafness. Involvement of the trachea can present with life-threatening stridor. Granulomas are also found in many sites outside the respiratory system including the kidney, central nervous system, prostate, parotid and orbit. Patients with microscopic polyangiitis and Wegener’s granulomatosis also present with systemic symptoms secondary to the small vessel vasculitis. Urine abnormalities include microscopic haematuria and proteinuria, with red cell casts on microscopy. The serum creatinine may initially be in the normal range, but acute renal failure tends to develop quite rapidly. Renal and respiratory involvement both have a significant effect on mortality.

Other organs in which vasculitis commonly occurs are skin, joints, muscles, gastrointestinal system, peripheral and central nervous system, and the eye.

Routine blood counts often show a normocytic or microcytic anaemia with a neutrophil leucocytosis, although there can also be eosinophilia (especially in Churg-Strauss syndrome) and thrombocytopenia.

Suggested alternative causes of lung haemorrhage include primary haematological abnormalities or systemic lupus erythematosus, in which case there will often be accompanying low complement levels and positive antinuclear antibodies. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate and C reactive protein level will both be raised. Biochemistry will often show a low serum albumin, raised alkaline phosphatase, and raised urea and creatinine. These results may point to a diagnosis of vasculitis but are relatively non-specific. The most important serological tests in the diagnosis of vasculitis are antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (ANCA). ANCA were first described in 1982 and subsequently was found to be associated with both Wegener’s granulomatosis and microscopic polyangiitis. There are two main patterns of ANCA—cytoplasmic (C) and perinuclear (P)—defined by their appearance on indirect immunofluorescence using ethanol fixed neutrophils. The main target antigen of C-ANCA is proteinase 3 (PR3). P-ANCA have a wider range of specificities but, in systemic vasculitis, they are usually specific for myeloperoxidase (MPO). Most patients with Wegener’s granulomatosis have anti-PR3 specific ANCA, patients with Churg-Strauss syndrome and polyarteritis nodosa have anti-MPO ANCA, and patients with microscopic polyangiitis have either anti-PR3 or anti-MPO ANCA. If immunofluorescence is used alone, then C-ANCA is more specific than p-ANCA for vasculitis since perinuclear staining is not only produced by myeloperoxidase antibodies but also by antinuclear antibodies and antibodies to neutrophil enzymes not associated with vasculitis. All serum that is ANCA positive should therefore be tested in PR3 and MPO ELISA as this greatly increases their specificity.

In a large European trial for the standardisation of ANCA assays, the specificity of immunofluorescence alone was found to be 97% for C-ANCA and 81% for a P-ANCA pattern. The combination of C-ANCA with anti-PR3 and P-ANCA with anti-MPO both had a specificity of 99%. However, a negative ANCA assay does not exclude the possibility of vasculitis as there are a few cases of small vessel vasculitides that are ANCA negative. In these cases a tissue diagnosis should be sought.

Management

Systemic vasculitis should be treated with cyclophosphamide (we use 3 mg/kg/day, reduced in the elderly to 2 mg/kg/day) combined with prednisolone. Historically, cyclophosphamide was continued for at least a year after remission. However, in view of the side effect profile of cyclophosphamide, many clinicians now substitute azathioprine in stable patients at 3 months. The European Vasculitis Study Group has set up a series of multicentre randomised controlled trials to investigate the roles of different immunosuppressive regimes in vasculitis. The first of these trials to be completed has recently confirmed that azathioprine is as effective as cyclophosphamide for maintenance of remission after 3 months. More recently mycophenylate mofetil, levamisole, and TNF directed treatment have also been used. In patients with fulminating disease such as dialysis dependent renal failure and alveolar haemorrhage, there may be an additional benefit from plasma exchange or intravenous methylprednisolone and the results of the current European trials should clarify this. In patients who fail to respond to this treatment or who cannot tolerate cyclophosphamide due to marrow suppression, there may also be a role for immunobiotherapy. Pooled immunoglobulin, or monoclonal antibodies, although so far much of the evidence is anecdotal. Lung haemorrhage is a major cause of early mortality and aggressive supportive therapy is important. Patients should be kept relatively intra-vascually depleted until the lung haemorrhage is controlled.
and clearly exacerbating pulmonary oedema must be avoided. Although acute renal failure may be exacerbated by this regimen, this is of secondary importance as the patient can be managed conservatively with diuretics. Severe acidosis and acute tubular necrosis caused by initial volume depletion is likely to recover in the long term. However, care must be taken to avoid hyperventilation of the splanchnic circulation with consequent gut necrosis caused by initial volume depletion.

In summary, patients admitted to the ICU with suspected pulmonary vasculitis have a high mortality of around 25–50%, depending upon aetiology. These patients should be discussed early with a centre which has specialist expertise in this area to ensure prompt diagnosis and access to adjuvant therapies such as plasma exchange. ANCA assays are vital in the diagnosis, and patients with suspected lung haemorrhage should be tested within 24 hours of presentation. This will help to minimize morbidity and mortality from these diseases. Good long-term survival can be achieved with prompt treatment in patients with appropriate immunosuppressive agents. Continued low dose immunosuppression and follow up are required long term as there is a high incidence of relapse.

REFERENCES

Congenital or acquired disorders affecting the respiratory muscles and/or causing chest wall deformity can precipitate ventilatory insufficiency either through the development of inspiratory muscle weakness or by a marked increase in the work of breathing due to low thoracic compliance. In some congenital disorders such as Duchenne muscular dystrophy and intermediate spinal muscular atrophy respiratory muscle involvement is almost inevitable; in others such as limb girdle muscular dystrophy and facioscapulohumeral muscular dystrophy respiratory muscle weakness is highly variable. Expiratory muscle weakness reduces cough efficiency and increases the tendency to atelectasis. Bulbar muscle involvement predisposes the individual to aspiration. Risk factors for ventilatory decompensation in patients with idiopathic scoliosis include early onset scoliosis (before the age of 5 years), a high (cephalad) thoracic curve, and a vital capacity of less than 30% predicted. Some acquired neuromuscular disorders—for example, motor neurone disease, Guillain Barré syndrome—may present with ventilatory failure due to respiratory muscle weakness; other patients with a precarious balance between ventilatory load and capacity may decompensate during a chest infection or after surgical intervention. In some neuromuscular disorders—for example, Duchenne muscular dystrophy and acid maltase deficiency—cardiomyopathy may complicate the picture. In addition, it should be remembered that congenital scoliosis is associated with an increased incidence of congenital heart disease. Intensivists should be able to identify patients at high risk of ventilatory failure from neuromusculoskeletal disorders and be prepared for weaning problems. They should also be aware of advances in non-invasive ventilation (NIV) that may be of value in avoiding the need for endotracheal intubation and conventional ventilation, and help facilitate early discharge from the intensive care unit (ICU).

CASE REPORT

A 40 year old woman was found to be anaemic at a routine blood donor session. Shortly after she developed joint pains and pruritus, and autoimmune haemolytic anaemia was diagnosed. A mediastinal mass was observed on her chest radiograph which was shown to be a thymoma on needle biopsy. The autoimmune haemolytic anaemia was complicated by red cell aplasia. Following prednisolone therapy the haemoglobin rose from 6.2 to 12.8 g/dl. There were no symptoms of myasthenia such as diplopia, limb weakness or dyspnoea, and the FEV1/FVC was 2.39/2.98 litres. The patient underwent a thoracotomy during which the thymic tumour was found to be adherent to the right hilum, right phrenic nerve, and pericardium. The tumour was resected with strips of the right lung at the hilum. Histologically, the

Figure 19.1 Chest radiograph showing elevated right hemidiaphragm and bibasal atelectasis, more marked at the right lung base.

Figure 19.2 Overnight monitoring of arterial oxygen saturation (SpcO2) and transcutaneous CO2 (PtcCO2) (A) after surgery breathing spontaneously and (B) during NIV.
tumour was a cortical thymoma. Initially the patient made a good recovery on the ICU and was rapidly extubated. However, over the following 2 weeks she became progressively more breathless and orthopnoeic. The chest radiograph showed elevation of the right hemidiaphragm and bibasal consolidation (fig 19.1). A ventilation-perfusion scan confirmed matched defects at both lung bases. Little response was seen to several courses of antibiotics and physiotherapy, and the patient reported continued orthopnoea and fragmented sleep. She was therefore referred to the weaning programme at the Royal Brompton Hospital for further assessment.

On arrival, breathing spontaneously she was unable to lie flat and the FEV/FVC while sitting was 1.05/1.2 litres. Arterial blood gas tensions on air were P0, 10.6 kPa, Pco2, 5.9 kPa, Hco3, 30.3 mmol/l. Overnight monitoring during which the patient slept very lightly showed a rise in transcutaneous (Tc) CO2 to 12 kPa with dips in arterial oxygen saturation (SaO2) to 60% breathing air (fig 19.2A). A CT scan showed patchy subsegmental atelectasis affecting the right and left lower lobes with marked elevation of the right hemidiaphragm. There was no evidence of thromboembolism. Baseline respiratory muscle test results are shown in table 19.1 and indicate a marked reduction in inspiratory muscle strength with a modest reduction in expiratory muscle strength. Stimulation of the phrenic nerves generated no transdiaphragmatic pressure spike bilaterally. A tension test using the diaphragm as the test muscle was negative (fig 19.3).

Thyroid function tests demonstrated hypothyroidism (free thyroxine 7.6 pmol/l (NR 9–23), thyroid stimulating hormone 17.7 mU/l (NR 0.32–5)).

**Diagnosis**

The patient had developed bilateral basal atelectasis and consolidation after thoracotomy for thymic resection because of marked diaphragmatic weakness. Ventilatory decompensation occurred during sleep due to loss of intercostal muscle tone in REM sleep leaving ventilation dependent on the already weak diaphragm. Ventilation is further compromised during sleep by a reduction in central drive and basal ventilation-perfusion mismatch. In this patient the differential diagnosis of respiratory muscle weakness lies between:

- myasthenia gravis;
- phrenic nerve injury caused by thymic tumour involvement and/or surgery;
- a combination of myasthenia and phrenic palsy;
- respiratory muscle weakness associated with hypothyroidism.1

The tension test was negative and respiratory muscle tests showed absent conduction down both phrenic nerves indicating that the main problem was phrenic nerve injury. The situation was probably exacerbated by hypothyroidism induced myopathy. Acetylcholinesterase (Ach) antibody was subsequently shown to be positive in this patient, but the combination of red cell aplasia, thymoma and Ach antibodies without clinical features of myasthenia has been reported previously. In a Japanese series of 17 cases of red cell aplasia and thymoma, only two patients had myasthenia.2

**Management**

The patient was started on nocturnal NIV via a nasal mask and thyroxine replacement therapy. She also received physiotherapy during NIV to facilitate coughing and secretion clearance. Theoretically, in this situation bilevel non-invasive positive pressure support may be more beneficial in addressing atelectasis than volume preset ventilation or inspiratory pressure support alone.3 The patient’s sleep quality improved, and overnight monitoring on NIV showed improvements in SaO2 and TcCO2 (fig 19.2B). Persistent anaemia was treated by transfusion to raise the haemoglobin above 8 g/dl. Basal atelectasis resolved over 1 week but the right hemidiaphragm remained elevated. The patient was discharged home after 16 days and continued to use nocturnal NIV.

Two months later the sniff inspiratory pressure was 27.6 cm H2O compared with a value of 16.2 cm H2O on arrival, and the patient had returned to work having completed a course of radiotherapy. Respiratory muscle test results obtained 6 months after surgery are given in table 19.1. These show a further improvement in inspiratory muscle strength with some recovery in conduction down the left phrenic nerve (fig 19.4), indicating that it was probably traumatised during the difficult surgical resection. There was no recovery in right phrenic nerve function, presumably because of partial

---

**Table 19.1 Respiratory muscle strength results**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tests of respiratory muscle strength</th>
<th>Predicted value (cm H2O)</th>
<th>Baseline (cm H2O)</th>
<th>6 months (cm H2O)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sniff Poes</td>
<td>&gt;70</td>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>29.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sniff Pdi</td>
<td>&gt;70</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>13.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cough Pgas</td>
<td>&gt;120</td>
<td>77.3</td>
<td>143.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral TwPdi</td>
<td>&gt;20</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right TwPdi</td>
<td>&gt;7</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left TwPdi</td>
<td>&gt;8</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sniff Poes=maximum sniff oesophageal pressure; snif Pdi=maximum sniff transdiaphragmatic pressure; cough Pgas=maximum cough gastric pressure; TwPdi=twitch transdiaphragmatic pressure following unilateral and bilateral magnetic stimulation of the phrenic nerve.2

---

**Figure 19.3** Twitch transdiaphragmatic pressure before and after the tension test. Pdi=transdiaphragmatic pressure; Pgas=gastric pressure; MS=magnetic stimulation. A normal twitch Pdi is given above for reference.
In this non-smoker, ventilatory decompensation only occurred at night due to the effects of sleep on respiration, but sleep fragmentation exacerbated her daytime symptoms. Respiratory muscle tests were used to help differentiate a true myasthenic syndrome from phrenic nerve damage.

NIV is a useful weaning tool. A randomised trial comparing rapid extubation on to NIV with continued intubation and pressure support ventilation in COPD patients showed more rapid weaning with fewer complications in the NIV group. In patients with restrictive ventilatory defects due to neuromuscular or chest wall disease, case series data suggest that NIV can shorten weaning and reduce the time spent on the ICU. NIV can also be used to prevent the need for reintubation if ventilatory failure recurs after extubation. In the case presented here, reintroduction of invasive ventilation following extubation was not indicated but NIV is likely to have facilitated recovery from basal atelectasis. NIV was successfully carried out on a high dependency unit and subsequently on a general respiratory ward, thereby eliminating the need for continued ICU bed occupancy.

REFERENCES

Figure 19.4 Recovery of left twitch transdiaphragmatic pressure after 6 months. Pdi=transdiaphragmatic pressure; Poes=oesophageal pressure; Pgas=gastric pressure; MS=magnetic stimulation.
A n estimated 36 million people worldwide are currently infected with HIV, about 1.46 million in North America and Western Europe and a further 25.3 million in sub-Saharan Africa. An estimated 30,000 adults and children became infected with HIV in Western Europe during the year 2000. The rate of infection, coupled with longer survival due to primary and secondary prophylaxis against opportunistic infection and highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), has resulted in the prevalence continuing to increase.1–3

Infection with HIV is associated with increased susceptibility to opportunistic infection with more than 100 viruses, bacteria, protozoa and fungi.1 Primary and secondary prophylaxis against opportunistic infections and HAART has led to changes in the nature, incidence, and presentation of opportunistic infections such as Pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP), Mycobacterium avium intracellulare (MAI), and cytomegalovirus (CMV) retinitis.1–3 New challenges are presented to physicians in medical high dependency units (HDUs) and intensive care units (ICUs). We report a patient who presented with HIV associated pneumonia and discuss the issues concerning admission to HDU/ICU of HIV infected individuals in the PCP prophylaxis and post-HAART era, drawing together current views of prognostic indicators and outcomes.

CASE REPORT

A 39 year old white man presented with a 3 week history of increasing shortness of breath accompanied by a non-productive cough, fever, and 5 kg weight loss. A diagnosis of HIV infection with a low CD4 count of 30 cells/mm$^3$ had been made 6 months earlier. He was homosexual with no history of recreational intravenous drug use. He was not taking PCP prophylaxis or HAART but instead took homeopathic treatment. On physical examination oral candidiasis, oral herpes infection, axillary and inguinal lymphadenopathy were identified. He had fever (38°C), tachypnoea, tachycardia, and oxygen saturation on air of 85%. There were no chest signs. A plain chest radiograph showed diffuse bilateral shadowing. Arterial blood gas measurements on air were as follows: PaO$_2$, 5.8 kPa, PCO$_2$, 3.54 kPa, O$_2$ saturation 71%. CRP level was raised at 144 mg/l. Liver and renal function tests were normal. The patient was unable to tolerate a diagnostic bronchoscopy.

A clinical diagnosis of PCP/community acquired pneumonia was made and he was started on high dose intravenous co-trimoxazole with adjunctive corticosteroid therapy, oral fluconazole, and intravenous cefuroxime/oral clarithromycin. Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) ventilation was started. Initially there was clinical improvement. In particular, the oxygen saturation improved to 93% on air and the CRP level fell to 7 mg/l. However, on day 9 he became unwell and his temperature (38°C), tachypnoea, and tachycardia. A chest radiograph showed increased diffuse bilateral change with a nodular appearance and patchy consolidation. Arterial blood gas measurements on air were as follows: PaO$_2$, 4.48 kPa, PCO$_2$, 3.39 kPa, O$_2$ saturation 71%. CRP had risen to 163 mg/l. He was treated for hospital acquired pneumonia with piperacillin/tazobactam and vancomycin in addition to the PCP treatment. Ganciclovir therapy was started. He was transferred to the ICU for increased respiratory support with bilevel positive airway pressure (BiPAP) ventilation via a nasal mask and subsequently improved clinically.

DISCUSSION

Pneumonia and HIV

The case described was initially treated empirically for community acquired bacterial pneumonia and PCP. Table 20.1 outlines common HIV associated pulmonary infections. In the absence of confirmatory tests, a diagnosis of PCP was most likely based on the clinical presentation and chest radiographic appearance in this at risk patient. PCP is nowadays most commonly seen in newly diagnosed HIV infected patients with advanced disease or HIV infected individuals not taking PCP prophylaxis or HAART. In the case described the patient had recently been diagnosed with advanced disease (CD4 count 30 cells/mm$^3$) and was not taking PCP prophylaxis or HAART. PCP typically presents when the CD4 count falls below 200 cells/mm$^3$ and is one of the most common opportunistic infections precipitating admission to the HDU and ICU for respiratory support.4–10,14 The risk of a first episode of infection below a CD4 count of 200 cells/mm$^3$ (in patients not taking PCP prophylaxis or HAART) is estimated to be 18% at 12 months in asymptomatic individuals, rising to 44% in those with early symptomatic disease such as oral candidiasis as in the case described.11 PCP prophylaxis with co-trimoxazole is recommended when the CD4 count falls to 200 cells/mm$^3$ or below. Patients with HIV infection on HAART with a CD4 count consistently improved to >200 cells/mm$^3$ have had PCP primary and secondary prophylaxis stopped without significant risk of subsequent PCP.15–20

Methods of diagnosis range from sputum induction to open lung biopsy. The diagnostic test of choice is fibreoptic bronchoscopy with lavage, providing the patient can tolerate the procedure. Transbronchial biopsy is useful but is occasionally complicated by haemorrhage and pneumothorax. Sputum induction with nebulised saline has a lower diagnostic sensitivity and should be carried out in a negative pressure facility. Patients unable to tolerate bronchoscopy should be treated empirically, based on clinical judgement and expert advice, as was the case here. The case discussed was treated with high dose co-trimoxazole.
and adjuvant high dose steroids, which is the most effective first line treatment for severe PCP. Table 20.2 describes first and second line treatment for PCP mild to moderate and severe disease. Second line treatment should be used for patients intolerant of or who have not responded to co-trimoxazole. The optimal dose of steroid and preferred second line treatment has yet to be determined.

The deterioration on day 9 was probably secondary to hospital acquired pneumonia and the patient was started on appropriate antibiotic treatment for this. He was also started on intravenous gancyclovir. The role of CMV infection during PCP is controversial and difficult to evaluate. Studies carried out during follow up (1992–1998), 12 month survival increased from 40% in 1992–3 to 63% in 1996–8. Early death was associated with a history of PCP, age >45 years, and CD4 count <50 cells/mm³. A recent study of 169 admissions of HIV positive individuals to the ICU found respiratory failure to be the most common reason for admission (38%). PCP is the most common cause of respiratory failure leading to ICU admission in HIV infected individuals.

Outcomes of mechanical ventilation for respiratory failure from PCP have changed since the start of the HIV epidemic. Before 1985 a hospital mortality of about 80% was described in this group. Table 20.3 shows a mortality rate for ventilated HIV positive patients with PCP from 1985 to 1997 of 50–79%. These changes are difficult to compare because of changing trends over the periods of studies, including the introduction of HAART and changes in the subgroup of patients with PCP progressing to mechanical ventilation on the ICU. Nevertheless, there appears to be an overall improvement in ICU survival. Furthermore, changes with respect to PCP prophylaxis and the use of adjuvant corticosteroids have yielded an overall improvement for HIV positive patients. PCP prophylaxis has resulted in fewer episodes of PCP, and the use of adjuvant corticosteroids has resulted in a smaller proportion of patients progressing to mechanical ventilation.

A French study of 110 cases of PCP requiring intensive care between 1989 and 1994 showed a 3 month mortality rate of 34.6% and 1 year survival estimated at 47%. Most patients only required CPAP support. One third required mechanical ventilation and, of those, 79% died. In another study in 1995–7 of 1660 patients with PCP only 9% required mechanical ventilation and the hospital mortality rate was 62%. A study covering the period 1993–6 correlated CD4 lymphocyte count and mortality in AIDS patients requiring mechanical ventilation due to PCP. Mortality increased from 25% for patients with CD4 cell counts >100 cells/mm³ to 100% in those with CD4 counts <10 cells/mm³.

A prospective study of 176 HIV positive patients with PCP identified PCP prophylaxis as predictive of progression to death, other factors being age, one or more episodes of PCP, treatment other than co-trimoxazole, and isolation of CMV from the BAL fluid.

Table 20.1 HIV associated pulmonary infections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bacteria</th>
<th>Mycobacteria</th>
<th>Fungi</th>
<th>Parasites</th>
<th>Viruses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcus pneumonia*</td>
<td>M tuberculosis**</td>
<td>Pneumocystis carinii†</td>
<td>Toxoplasma gondii</td>
<td>Influenza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemophilus influenza*</td>
<td>M avium intracellular</td>
<td>Cryptococcus neoformans***</td>
<td>Cryptosporidium ssp</td>
<td>Parainfluenza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staphylococcus aureus*</td>
<td>M kansasisi</td>
<td>Candida albicans</td>
<td>Microsporidium ssp</td>
<td>Respiratory syncytial virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Klebsiella pneumonia*</td>
<td>A. Baumannii</td>
<td>Aspergillus spp</td>
<td>Leishmania ssp</td>
<td>Rhinovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudomonas aeruginosa*</td>
<td>Nocardia asteroides</td>
<td>Penicillium marneffei</td>
<td>Stronglyloides stercoralis</td>
<td>Adenovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nocardia asteroides</td>
<td>Rochealimia fisenae</td>
<td>Histoplasma capsulatum</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cytomegalovirus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The common causes of bacterial pneumonia are shown. 1-6 One third of the pneumonias are bacteremia. Bacteremia is more common in pneumococcal pneumonia. Pseudomonal pneumonia is associated with a lower CD4 count than with pneumococcal pneumonia. 6
- **Multidrug-resistant (MDR) tuberculosis (resistant to isoniazid and rifampicin) is becoming an increasing problem among HIV positive individuals in North America. Antituberculous treatment regimens and toxicity, especially with regard to drug interactions and toxicity, especially if the patient is on HAART. Interactions such as those between the rifamycins and protease inhibitors or non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors can lead to lower efficacy or increased toxicity of the anti-retroviral regimen.
- †Cytomegalovirus infection presents either as a primary lung infection or as part of a disseminated infection with cryptotococcosis, pneumonia, meningitis, and cutaneous disease.
- ‡Pneumocystis organisms from different host species have different DNA sequences. It has recently been suggested that the organism that causes human Pneumocystis Pneumonia (PCP) should be named Pneumocystis jiroveci Frenkel 1999. Pneumocystis carinii should now be used to describe the rat derived infection (Stringer JR, Beard CB, Miller RF, Wakefield AE. A new name (PCP) should be named Pneumocystis jiroveci for Pneumocystis from humans. Emerging Infect Dis 2002, 8:691–6.)

Pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP) and respiratory support on HDU/ICU

Survival after a diagnosis of PCP has improved in recent years. Among 4412 patients in the USA with 5222 episodes of PCP during follow up (1992–1998), 12 month survival increased from 40% in 1992–3 to 63% in 1996–8. Early death was associated with a history of PCP, age >45 years, and CD4 count <50 cells/mm³. A recent study of 169 admissions of HIV positive individuals to the ICU found respiratory failure to be the most common reason for admission (38%). PCP is the most common cause of respiratory failure leading to ICU admission in HIV infected individuals.

Outcomes of mechanical ventilation for respiratory failure from PCP have changed since the start of the HIV epidemic. Before 1985 a hospital mortality of about 80% was described in this group. Table 20.3 shows a mortality rate for ventilated HIV positive patients with PCP from 1985 to 1997 of 50–79%. These changes are difficult to compare because of changing trends over the periods of studies, including the introduction of HAART and changes in the subgroup of patients with PCP progressing to mechanical ventilation on the ICU. Nevertheless, there appears to be an overall improvement in ICU survival. Furthermore, changes with respect to PCP prophylaxis and the use of adjuvant corticosteroids have yielded an overall improvement for HIV positive patients. PCP prophylaxis has resulted in fewer episodes of PCP, and the use of adjuvant corticosteroids has resulted in a smaller proportion of patients with PCP progressing to mechanical ventilation.

A French study of 110 cases of PCP requiring intensive care between 1989 and 1994 showed a 3 month mortality rate of 34.6% and 1 year survival estimated at 47%. Most patients only required CPAP support. One third required mechanical ventilation and, of those, 79% died. In another study in 1995–7 of 1660 patients with PCP only 9% required mechanical ventilation and the hospital mortality rate was 62%. A study covering the period 1993–6 correlated CD4 lymphocyte count and mortality in AIDS patients requiring mechanical ventilation due to PCP. Mortality increased from 25% for patients with CD4 cell counts >100 cells/mm³ to 100% in those with CD4 counts <10 cells/mm³. A prospective study of 176 HIV positive patients with PCP identified PCP prophylaxis as predictive of progression to death, other factors being age, one or more episodes of PCP, treatment other than co-trimoxazole, and isolation of CMV from the BAL fluid.
Table 20.2 Treatment of Pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug**</th>
<th>Duration of treatment</th>
<th>Side effects</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First line treatment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Co-trimoxazole 120 mg/kg daily in 2-4 divided doses po/iv (480 mg co-trimoxazole consists of sulfamethoxazole 400 mg and trimethoprim 80 mg)</td>
<td>21 days</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, fever, rash (including Stevens-Johnson’s syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, photosensitivity), blood disorders (including neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, rarely agranulocytosis and purpura), rarely allergic reactions, diarrhoea, glossitis, stomatitis, anorexia, arthralgia, myalgia, liver damage, pancreatitis, antibiotic associated colitis, eosinophilia, asptic meningitis, headache, depression, convulsions, ataxia, tinnitus, megaloblastic anaemia, due to trimethoprim, crystalluria, renal disorders including interstitial nephritis.</td>
<td>Intolerance common. Initial treatment with iv preparation. Comes in ampoule containing 480 mg; these should be diluted in at least 75 ml of 5% dextrose. Infuse over 60 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe disease:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Adjuvant high dose steroids (e.g. prednisolone 40–80 mg daily po. Alternatively, hydrocortisone may be given iv)</td>
<td>5 days; reduce dose over 14–21 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicated in severe disease. Optimal dose not determined. Consult HIV specialist for advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second line treatment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild to moderate disease:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Trimethoprim 20 mg/kg/day po/iv in 2–3 divided doses and dapsone 100 mg po daily</td>
<td>21 days</td>
<td>Trimethoprim: gastrointestinal disturbance, pruritus, rash, depression of haematopoiesis; rarely erythema multiforme, toxic epidermal necrolysis; asptic meningitis. Dapsone: haemolysis, methaemoglobinemia, neuropathy, allergic dermatitis, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, insomnia, psychosis, agranulocytosis; dapsone syndrome (rash with fever and eosinophilia); stop immediately (may progress to exfoliative dermatitis, hepatitis, hypoaalbuminemia, psychosis and death).</td>
<td>Avoid in G6PD deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Clindamycin 600 mg 6 hourly po/iv and primaquine 15 mg daily po</td>
<td>21 days</td>
<td>Clindamycin: diarrhoea, nausea and vomiting; jaundice, abnormal liver function tests; neutropenia, eosinophilia, agranulocytosis and thrombocytopenia; rash. Primaquine: nausea and vomiting, abdominal pain; methaemoglobinemia, haemolytic anaemia.</td>
<td>Clastidium difficile toxin associated diarrhoea is a complication of clindamycin therapy. Primaquine: caution in G6PD deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atovaquone suspension 750 mg twice daily</td>
<td>21 days</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea; headache, insomnia; rash, fever; elevated liver enzymes and amylase; anaemia, neutropenia; hyponatraemia</td>
<td>Consider combination with iv pentamidine as resistance reported with monotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe disease:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Pentamidine isethionate 4 mg/kg/day as a slow intravenous infusion</td>
<td>21 days</td>
<td>Severe reactions, sometimes fatal, due to hypotension, hypoglycaemia, pancreatitis and arthralgia; also leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, acute renal failure, hypocalcaemia; also reported azothaemia, abnormal liver function tests, anaemia, hyperkalaemia, nausea and vomiting, dizziness, syncope, flushing, hyperglycaemia, rash, taste disturbance, Stevens-Johnson’s syndrome reported; on inhalation, bronchospasm, cough, shortness of breath and wheeze; discomfort, pain, induration, oedema, formation, and muscle necrosis at injection site.</td>
<td>Give over at least 1 hour with patient lying flat. Monitor blood pressure closely. Important side effects include severe hypotension and hypoglycaemia. Monitor BMAtix during and after infusion for 12 hours. If changing from co-trimoxazole to pentamidine due to poor clinical response, continue co-trimoxazole for 3 days. If intolerant, give nebulised pentamidine 600 mg daily for first 3 days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Trimetrexate 45 mg/m² iv and folinic acid 80 mg/m²</td>
<td>21 days</td>
<td>Blood disorders (thrombocytopenia, granulocytopenia and anaemia); diarrhoea and vomiting, oral and gastrointestinal mucosal ulceration; fever, confusion, rarely seizures; disturbed liver function tests, plasma calcium, potassium and magnesium reported, rash, anaphylaxis and local irritation at the injection site.</td>
<td>Used as an alternative for patients intolerant of co-trimoxazole and pentamidine isethionate or who do not respond to these drugs. Trimetrexate is a potent dihydrofolate reductase inhibitor and must be give with calcium folinate. Administer calcium folinate during treatment and for 72 hours after last dose (to avoid potentially serious bone marrow suppression, oral and gastrointestinal ulceration, and renal and hepatic dysfunction); suspend myelosuppressive drugs (e.g. zidovudine).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*po=by mouth; iv=intravenously.
**Consult HIV specialist for advice.
* Treatment of PCP infections should be undertaken where facilities for appropriate monitoring are available; consult a microbiologist/HIV specialist and the product literature before administering these drugs.
Attempts have been made to use staging systems to predict patient mortality from HIV associated PCP since the introduction of PCP prophylaxis and HAART. One such system generated from data relating to 1660 cases of PCP diagnosed between 1995 and 1997 identified an ordered five category staging system based on three predictors: wasting, alveolar–arterial oxygen gradient, and serum albumin level. The mortality rate increased with stage, ranging from 3.7% for stage 1 to 49.1% for stage 5. The prognostic markers identified are summarised in table 20.4.

Impact of early HAART
Since 1996 HAART has had an enormous impact on the natural history of HIV infection. HAART usually involves triple therapy with two nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors and either a protease inhibitor or a non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor. During the first 2 years of the widespread application of HAART there was a reduction in HIV related mortality, although this has since levelled out.1,243 There are problems with adherence, pharmacology, and toxicity, but 50–90% of patients on HAART achieve sustained suppression of the virus and most patients show low persistent viral replication. Unfortunately, the viral mutation rate is such that viral genomes with each possible nucleotide substitution can be generated daily in an infected host, making the speed of drug resistance unacceptably fast. This has led to predictions that about half of all patients may develop resistance to current treatments.40,41

The success of HAART has led to a reappraisal of the role of prophylaxis for opportunistic infections such as PCP, CMV, and M. avium. This is due to the decreased risk of opportunistic infections in the face of a reduced viral load and sustained or increased CD4 T cell levels, and because of problems of drug interactions between HAART and prophylactic therapies.4,15–20,45–48 The Adult/Adolescent Spectrum of HIV Disease Cohort Study showed a decrease of 55% in opportunistic infections including PCP, CMV, and M. avium between 1992 and 1997.49 The EuroSIDA study (a prospective study involving about 7300 patients) looked at the risk of opportunistic infections or death for patients on HAART. Patients with CD4 counts that consistently rose from <200 cells/mm³ to >200 cells/mm³ on HAART were substantially protected against opportunistic infections compared with patients with CD4 counts persistently below 50 cells/mm³ (3.7–8.1 v 72.9 episodes per patient year).50 There is evidence to suggest that HAART is associated with improved early survival from PCP (odds ratio 0.2).51 Patients with bacterial pneumonia or PCP were admitted to the ICU less frequently following the introduction of HAART in 1996.52 The optimal timing for the introduction of HAART in patients with PCP is not known. Cases of severe acute respiratory failure have been described following reintroduction.

CONCLUSION
Many studies have tried to identify prognostic markers for the survival of HIV infected patients admitted to the ICU, with relatively little consensus. The strongest single indicator seems to be the CD4 count. Identifying objective outcome predictors will help clinicians to decide when to pursue aggressive treatment and when to withhold or withdraw it. The mortality rate of HIV infected patients admitted to the ICU has improved and probably reflects improved outcome of HIV infection in general with the introduction of PCP prophylaxis, adjunctive corticosteroid use in the treatment of PCP, and HAART. For selected cases, ICU care of HIV infected individuals with

---

**Table 20.3** ICU admission, mechanical ventilation, and mortality in episodes of HIV related Pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP) studied between 1985 and 1997

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HIV related PCP episodes studied (n)</th>
<th>Country of study</th>
<th>Period of study</th>
<th>% of patients admitted to ICU</th>
<th>% of patients requiring mechanical ventilation</th>
<th>Mortality (%) of patients mechanically ventilated</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>348</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>1985–89</td>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2174</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>1987–90</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>62–46**</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>1989–94</td>
<td>100***</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>1990–95</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1660</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>1995–97</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Data not available.
**Episodes were stratified into patients receiving care in an ICU with [first figure] or without [second figure] a prior AIDS defining illness. Data relating to mechanical ventilation status not available for this study.
***This study was limited to ICU admissions.

**Table 20.4** Prognostic markers significantly associated with mortality in ICU admissions of HIV positive patients with Pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP) requiring mechanical ventilation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HIV related PCP episodes studied (n)</th>
<th>Period of study</th>
<th>Prognostic markers associated with ICU mortality*</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>1989–94</td>
<td>Respiratory status deterioration requiring delayed mechanical ventilation; mechanical ventilation for 5 days or more; nosocomial infection, pneumothorax</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48*</td>
<td>1993–96</td>
<td>Low CD4 cell count within 2 weeks of admission**</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>1990–99</td>
<td>Low CD4 cell count; prior PCP prophylaxis, CMV in BAL fluid, age, initial anti-PCP therapy</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155</td>
<td>1995–97</td>
<td>Prior PCP prophylaxis; high APACHE II score &gt;17, low serum albumin &lt;25 g/l, ARDS, low CD4 cell count &lt;150 cells/mm³, arterial pH &lt;7.35</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>1993–98</td>
<td></td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Rows cannot be directly compared since studies considered different sets of variables. In most of the studies shown here a low CD4 cell count is taken to mean <200 cells/mm³.
**This study was limited to patients with CD4 count <200 cells/mm³ and on ICU with mechanical ventilation. Mortality varied significantly depending on CD4 counts: >100 cells/mm³, 25%; 51–100 cells/mm³, 50%; 11–50 cells/mm³, 88%; 0–10 cells/mm³, 100%.

*Data not available.
**Episodes were stratified into patients receiving care in an ICU with [first figure] or without [second figure] a prior AIDS defining illness. Data relating to mechanical ventilation status not available for this study.
***This study was limited to ICU admissions.
respiratory failure secondary to pneumonia is associated with a positive outcome. HIV and intensive care physicians need to work in close collaboration to deliver optimal care.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The authors thank Dr Daniel Altman for his critical review of the manuscript. Department of Infectious Diseases, Hammersmith Campus, Imperial College, London, UK.

REFERENCES

CASE REPORT
A 21 year old Afro-Caribbean man with known sickle cell disease (SCD) was admitted to hospital with painful chest, thighs, and generalised abdominal pain. This was his second admission to hospital with a sickle cell crisis. He was on no regular medications apart from analgesia taken at home during crises. Apart from anaemia, there was nothing abnormal to find on examination. The haemoglobin (Hb) was 7.5 g/dl (normal for him), white cell count 22.5 × 10<sup>9</sup>, and the electrolytes were normal apart from a slightly raised C-reactive protein (CRP) level of 30 mg/l. Radiographs of his abdomen and thighs were normal, but his chest radiograph showed a small degree of basal atelectasis bilaterally. His oxygen saturation was 96% on air. He was treated with a subcutaneous opiate infusion using a syringe pump, intravenous fluids, oxygen, and encouraged to drink.

Over the next 24 hours his pain was not well controlled and required an increasing dose of opiates. He became pyrexial (38.5°C), his oxygen saturation fell to 92% on air, and antibiotics to cover community acquired pneumonia were commenced. On the third day, however, he became more drowsy with arterial blood gases of pH 7.35, PaO<sub>2</sub> 13.5 kPa, and PaCO<sub>2</sub> 7.5 kPa on 40% oxygen. A repeat chest radiograph showed new infiltrates in both lower zones and a diagnosis of acute sickle chest syndrome (ACS) was made. Despite an exchange transfusion, he continued to deteriorate and was eventually intubated and ventilated. Intensive care his FiO<sub>2</sub> was reduced from the initial 50% to 28% within 24 hours. Sputum samples obtained by tracheobronchial suction showed no significant bacterial growth, but his CRP had risen to 150 mg/l so the antibiotic spectrum was broadened. After 3 days of mechanical ventilation his chest radiograph showed significant clearing of the lower zones, he was extubated without incident, and discharged from hospital after a further few days. Subsequent atypical respiratory serological examination did not show any rise in titres.

DISCUSSION
ACS consists of a combination of signs and symptoms including dyspnoea, chest pain, fever, cough, multifocal pulmonary infiltrates on the chest radiograph, and a raised white cell count. It is a form of lung injury that can progress to adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). It is estimated that half of all patients with sickle cell anaemia will develop ACS at least once in their lives, and ACS is the second most common cause of admission after painful vaso-occlusive crises. The most recent statistics from the USA suggest that 13% of patients with ACS require mechanical ventilation with a mortality rate of 3%, mostly affecting adults; the average length of stay was 10.5 days. ACS is the most common cause of death in these patients<sup>1,4</sup> and may be the cause of the chronic pulmonary abnormalities seen on high resolution CT scanning.<sup>3</sup>

Although this illustrative case with a typical presentation of ACS had a favourable outcome, the question is raised of whether anything could have been done to avoid respiratory failure.

Pathophysiology of the acute chest syndrome in sickle cell disease
The genetic defect in sickle cell anaemia causes a substitution of valine for glycine in the β-globin subunit of haemoglobin to form HbS. HbS is less soluble than normal haemoglobin (HbA) when deoxygenated, as a result of which HbS polymers within the cell. This stiffens the erythrocyte and changes it from its normal biconcave form to a sickle shaped cell. The sickle cell also loses the flexibility required to traverse capillary beds. Hypoxia also enhances adhesion of red cells to the vascular endothelium, a process mediated by interaction between very late activation antigen 4 (VLA-4) expressed on sickle cells and vascular cell adhesion molecule 1 (VCAM-1) on endothelial cells.<sup>7</sup> As a consequence, the sickle cells occlude small and sometimes larger vessels causing vascular injury, especially to organs with sluggish circulation such as the spleen and bone marrow and in atelectatic areas of lung. There are four precipitants of ACS: infection, atelectasis, fat embolism, and true thromboembolism (fig 21.1). Each may progress to a common final pathway of reduced ventilation with hypoxia and increased sickling. The most common finding in the lung during an acute painful crisis affecting the chest wall is atelectasis from a combination of poor chest expansion caused by painful rib and vertebral infarction and suppressed respiratory drive due to opiates. Atelectasis promotes sickling locally due to hypoxia causing inflammation, intravascular coagulation, and vascular obstruction with eventual micro-infarction. In adults, particularly, vaso-occlusion in the bone marrow causes marrow infarction and fat embolism. At post mortem examination many patients have bony spicules and marrow fat in the lung, and lipid laden macrophages can be found in bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) fluid of patients with ACS.<sup>6</sup> There is also increased circulating secretory phospholipase A2, a potent inflammatory mediator originating from the bone marrow, both in patients with ACS and those who are at risk of developing ACS, but not in those with uncomplicated vaso-occlusive crises.<sup>8,9</sup>

Nitric oxide (NO) is an endothelium derived vasodilator and a modulator of diverse inflammatory processes. Plasma concentrations of secretory VCAM-1 are raised in patients with ACS and are inversely related to plasma levels of NO.
metabolites. NO inhibits VCAM-1 expression, thus reduced endothelial synthesis of NO during vaso-occlusive crises and hypoxia may contribute to red cell adhesion within the lung. NO binds and increases HbS avidity for oxygen both in vitro and in vivo, and hence may reduce its tendency for polymerisation and thus has a potential therapeutic role in ACS.

NO is thought to play a significant role in the regulation of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. Exhaled concentrations of NO are directly related to the inhaled concentration of oxygen, suggesting that oxygen may be a rate limiting substrate for NO synthesis. Normal Hb has an affinity for NO that is 3000 times that of oxygen, so Hb may act as a "biological sink" for NO and rapid clearance of NO by Hb may contribute to hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. However, in the presence of anaemia there may be failure of hypoxic vasoconstriction due to increased local levels of NO, despite reduced local production. Failure of hypoxic vasoconstriction worsens ventilation-perfusion matching, giving ideal conditions for further sickness and eventually ACS.

Hydroxyurea has made a big impact on the management of SCD. In a double blind, placebo controlled trial in 299 adults with sickle cell anaemia who had at least three painful episodes in the preceding year, hydroxyurea reduced the frequency of painful episodes, the incidence of ACS, and reduced the need for hospitalisation and transfusion. Hydroxyurea increases the concentration of fetal Hb (HbF) in erythrocytes, reducing the tendency for polymerisation of HbS. However, some clinical improvements are seen before the HbF concentration increases. In other studies hydroxyurea reduced adhesion of sickle cells to the vascular endothelium in vitro by reducing VCAM-1 expression. Hydroxyurea is also oxidised by heme groups to produce NO, and increased plasma NO metabolites can be detected during treatment. The beneficial effects of hydroxyurea may therefore be mediated via its properties as an NO donor as well as its effects on HbF.

Management of acute chest syndrome
Most adult patients are admitted with vaso-occlusive crises and develop ACS after a few days, whereas children are more likely to have a preceding febrile illness or infection. Once the process of lung injury has started it may be difficult to stop, and thus the aim of management should be to prevent ACS. Although the causes, clinical presentation, and outcomes of ACS have been well documented, less is known about its prevention or management.

General management
The most common cause for emergency admission of adults with SCD is a vaso-occlusive crisis. The mainstays of management are pain control, rehydration, oxygenation, and treatment of any identifiable precipitating cause. Common precipitants are infection, cold, stress, hypoxia and dehydration, but very often no obvious cause can be found. Infection—both bacterial and viral—is more common in children.

 Adequate pain control usually requires initial high doses of opiates given by subcutaneous or intramuscular injection. The aim is to control pain rather than treating it as required. It is not uncommon for the doses required to suppress respiration and cough, causing atelectasis, retained secretions, and hypoxaemia. On the other hand, inadequate pain control may limit expansion and cough with the same consequences. In patients requiring opiates, intravenous rehydration is preferred aiming for 3–4 litres a day as the patient may not be able to drink adequate amounts owing to pain or drowsiness from excessive analgesia. Care should be taken not to cause fluid overload, especially in patients with impaired renal or cardiac function as a long term complication of SCD. Fluid overload will exacerbate pulmonary oedema associated with lung injury. Patients should be encouraged to drink freely.

There is a trend to give oxygen routinely to all patients with a vaso-occlusive crisis. However, if the oxygen saturations are normal (>97% on air), there is little to be gained from supplemental oxygen although it may reduce sickling in poorly ventilated areas of the lung. In patients with reduced respiratory drive or ventilation-perfusion mismatch, oxygen saturations may be reassuringly normal while the patient is on supplemental oxygen, masking the onset of acute lung injury. We recommend that pulse oximetry should be monitored regularly and all measurements should be performed after breathing room air for 10 minutes. If there is a fall of more than a few percent from normal values (patients with SCD may have low baseline levels due to chronic sickle lung disease), the cause should be sought and treated aggressively to prevent progression to ACS.

Specific management
Respiratory infection is a common precipitant of a sickle crisis but pathogens are rarely detected. In one study an identifiable pathogen was isolated in just over 30% of episodes, but this figure is dependent on how hard one looks. The two most common organisms were Chlamydia pneumoniae and Mycoplasma (mostly M pneumoniae and occasionally M hominis). Children suffered more infections with respiratory syncytial virus and parvovirus. Pneumococcus or Staphylococcus were less common, even though most patients are hyposplenemic. However, in the reported study patients with chlamydial infections were less likely to be taking prophylactic antibiotics. Many of the cases of infection also had evidence of marrow infarction. Since atypical organisms predominate, a strong case can be made for treatment with macrolide antibiotics as the first line treatment when infection is thought to be the cause. However, caution should be exercised as the pattern of infectious agents in the UK may be different and further studies are required.

About 25% of patients with ACS wheeze and may respond to bronchodilators. Obstructive spirometry and small airways disease is not an uncommon finding in patients with SCD. Thus, in patients on mechanical ventilation, high airway pressure may be due to airway obstruction rather than reduced lung compliance, and gas trapping and intrinsic positive end expiratory pressure should be monitored. Routine use of incentive spirometry has recently been recommended to prevent atelectasis and ACS in patients with SCD admitted with chest or bone pain. In this randomised control study on
Illustrative case 6: acute chest syndrome of sickle cell anaemia

29 patients, 10 maximal inspirations with the incentive spirometer every 2 hours while the patient was awake significantly reduced the incidence of pulmonary complications. We prefer to use CPAP when the saturations fall below 93% on air or there is atelectasis on the chest radiograph. This is because pain and opiate sedation limits effort and compliance with active breathing techniques.

Blood transfusion and exchange transfusion are not required during uncomplicated painful episodes, but may be necessary when haemolysis is severe, if a large amount of blood is sequestrated in the spleen, or if there is an aplastic crisis caused by parvovirus infection. However, exchange transfusion can dramatically alter the course of ACS by replacing sickle cells with those containing HbA and by improving anaemia.\(^a\)\(^b\)\(^c\) In addition, transfusion also rapidly improves oxygenation, which suggests that anaemia may lead to increased local pulmonary NO accumulation increasing shunt by counteracting hypoxic vasoconstriction.\(^a\)\(^b\) Whether exchange transfusion is superior to simple transfusion is unclear, but in the US study of ACS both were effective with a low risk of alloimmunisation if phenotypically matched blood was used.\(^d\) Our practice is to use exchange transfusion aiming for HbS <20% and a total Hb of <14.5 g/dl. During uncomplicated painful episodes, but may be necessary.


A painful crisis must be to prevent progression to ACS. A multidisciplinary approach involving haematologists, chest physicians, sickle cell specialist nurses, and physiotherapists is effective with a low risk of alloimmunisation if phenotypically matched blood was used.\(^d\) Our practice is to use exchange transfusion aiming for HbS <20% and a total Hb of <14.5 g/dl. During uncomplicated painful episodes, but may be necessary.


If atelectasis is diagnosed on the chest radiograph. This is because pain and opiate sedation limits effort and compliance with active breathing techniques.

CONCLUSION

New insights into the pathogenesis of ACS have highlighted potential therapeutic strategies—for example, involving NO. However, the focus of management of a patient admitted with a painful crisis must be to prevent progression to ACS. A multidisciplinary approach involving haematologists, chest physicians, sickle cell specialist nurses, and physiotherapists is therefore required with emphasis on adequate pain control, rehydration, adequate oxygenation, treatment of atelectasis, prompt treatment of infection, and the use of bronchodilators.

REFERENCES

22 Illustrative case 7: assessment and management of massive haemoptysis

J L Lordan, A Gascoigne, P A Corris

Haemoptysis may be the presenting symptom of a number of diseases,\textsuperscript{1-7} with an associated mortality ranging from 7% to 30%.\textsuperscript{8} Although fewer than 5% of patients presenting with haemoptysis expectorate large volumes of blood, the explosive clinical presentation and the unpredictable course of life-threatening haemoptysis demands prompt evaluation and management. We have reviewed the aetiology of massive haemoptysis and alveolar haemorrhage, with particular reference to current diagnostic and therapeutic strategies.

CASE HISTORY

A 69 year old woman was an emergency admission with large volume haemoptysis which did not settle spontaneously. She had previously undergone a left mastectomy for breast carcinoma. Alveolar shadowing was noted in the left mid zone on the chest radiograph, consistent with recent pulmonary haemorrhage (fig 22.1A). A thoracic computed thoracic (CT) scan confirmed consolidation and volume loss in the left upper lobe and lingula, but also showed a mass anteriorly eroding through the chest wall, consistent with local recurrence of the breast neoplasm (fig 22.1B). Pulmonary angiography showed no abnormality, but bronchial angiography identified a trunk that supplied a moderate pathological circulation anteriorly in the left upper lobe in the region of the abnormality on the CT scan. The artery was successfully embolised using polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) foam granules (500–700 µm in diameter, fig 22.2). The internal mammary artery was also catheterised and a pathological circulation was noted that was occluded using platinum coils (fig 22.1A) and PVA granules, with no complications and no recurrence of haemoptysis.

DEFINITION

Although there is no generally accepted definition of the volume of blood that constitutes a massive haemoptysis, studies have quoted volumes ranging from 100 ml up to or more than 1000 ml per day.\textsuperscript{9,10} As the anatomical dead space of the major airways is 100–200 ml, a more relevant definition of massive haemoptysis is the volume that is life threatening by virtue of airway obstruction or blood loss.\textsuperscript{11,12}

AETIOLOGY

It is important to establish that the lung is the source of bleeding, in part by excluding the nasopharynx or gastrointestinal tract. The most common causes of massive haemoptysis are listed in box 22.1. Haemoptysis originates from the bronchial and pulmonary circulation in 90% and 5% of cases, respectively.\textsuperscript{13} Bleeding from the bronchial arteries has the propensity to cause massive haemoptysis as it is a circulation at systemic pressure. Alveolar haemorrhage is a recognised cause of haemoptysis, but rarely causes massive bleeding as the alveoli have the capacity to accommodate a large volume of blood.\textsuperscript{14} A more common presentation is mild haemoptysis, pulmonary infiltrates, and anaemia.\textsuperscript{15}

Chronic inflammatory conditions (including bronchiectasis, tuberculosis, lung abscess) and lung malignancies are the most common causes of massive haemoptysis.\textsuperscript{16} Similarly, bleeding may occur from a mycetoma in the presence of cavitating lung disease.\textsuperscript{17} The concurrent development of haemoptysis and menstruation points to a diagnosis of catamenial haemoptysis. The presence of haemoptysis and spontaneous pneumothorax in a woman of childbearing age with diffuse interstitial abnormalities on the chest radiograph should raise the suspicion of lymphangiolaeomyomatosis.\textsuperscript{18}

The presence of a saddle nose, rhinitis, or perforated nasal septum may suggest a diagnosis of Wegener’s granulomatosis.\textsuperscript{19} Features of Behçet’s disease include oral or genital ulceration, uveitis, cutaneous nodules, and pulmonary artery aneurysm which is associated with a 30% 2 year mortality rate.\textsuperscript{20} Although haematuria may be present in association with Goodpasture’s disease, 5–10% of patients present without clinical evidence of renal disease.\textsuperscript{21}

DIAGNOSTIC PROCEDURES

Sputum should be sent for microbiological investigation, including staining and culture for mycobacteria, and cytological examination if the patient is a smoker and over 40 years of age. Chest radiography may help to identify causative lesions or infiltrates resulting from pulmonary haemorrhage, but fails to localise the lesion in 20–46% of patients with haemoptysis.\textsuperscript{22} A CT scan may show small bronchial carcinomas or localised bronchiectasis.\textsuperscript{23} The use of contrast may help to identify vascular abnormalities such as arteriovenous malformations or aneurysms.\textsuperscript{24} Despite all investigative procedures, the aetiology of haemoptysis is unknown in up to 5–10% of patients.\textsuperscript{25}

MANAGEMENT OF MASSIVE HAEMOPTYSIS

The initial approach to managing life threatening haemorrhage involves resuscitation and protecting the airway (fig 22.3), the second step is directed at localising the site and cause of bleeding, and the final step involves the application of definitive and specific treatments to prevent recurrent bleeding.

Airway protection and resuscitation

All patients with massive haemoptysis should be monitored in an intensive care unit (ICU) or high dependency unit (HDU) and the patient’s fitness...
for surgery established. Attempts should be made to determine the side of bleeding and the patient positioned with the bleeding side down to prevent aspiration into the unaffected lung. Blood loss should be treated with volume resuscitation, blood transfusion, and correction of coagulopathy. If large volume bleeding continues or the airway is compromised, the patient’s trachea should be intubated with as large an endotracheal tube as is possible to allow adequate suctioning and access for bronchoscopy. If the bleeding can only be localised to the right or left lung, unilateral lung intubation may protect the non-bleeding lung. For right sided bleeding a bronchoscope may be directed into the left main bronchus which can then be selectively intubated over the bronchoscope with the patient lying in the right lateral position (fig 22.4). The left lung is then protected from aspiration and selectively ventilated. For a left sided bleeding source the patient is placed in the left lateral position and selective intubation of the right lung may be performed, but this may lead to occlusion of the right upper lobe bronchus. An alternative strategy is to pass an endotracheal tube over the bronchoscope into the trachea. A Fogarty catheter (size 14 French/100 cm length) may then be passed through the vocal cords beside the endotracheal tube, directed by the bronchoscope into the left main bronchus and inflated (fig 22.5). This prevents aspiration of blood from the left lung and the endotracheal tube positioned in the trachea allows ventilation of the unaffected right lung.

An alternative strategy for unilateral bleeding is to pass a double lumen endotracheal tube, which allows isolation and ventilation of the normal lung and prevents aspiration from the side involved by bleeding (fig 22.6). However, inserting double lumen tubes should only be performed by experienced operators to avoid the serious consequences of poor positioning.

Identifying the site and cause of bleeding

Precise localisation of the bleeding site directs definitive treatment. Fibreoptic bronchoscopy and angiography are the modalities of choice to localise the site of bleeding and to allow therapeutic intervention, although the timing of bronchoscopy is controversial. Early compared with delayed bronchoscopy gives a higher yield for localising the site of bleeding. In contrast to mild haemoptysis, localisation of the

Figure 22.1 (A) Chest radiograph showing previous left mastectomy and left upper lobe and lingular infiltrates due to airway bleeding. A platinum embolisation coil is noted on this postembolisation radiograph (arrow). (B) CT scan showing a mass lesion (arrow) involving the left anterior chest wall with associated left upper zone consolidation, consistent with recent haemoptysis and local tumour recurrence following the previous mastectomy.

Figure 22.2 Use of selective bronchial artery embolisation to control massive haemoptysis. (A) Bronchial angiogram showing common trunk and left sided abnormal circulation pre-embolisation, and (B) post-embolisation angiogram showing the left bronchial artery and successful embolisation of abnormal vessels.
Box 22.1 Causes of massive haemoptysis and alveolar haemorrhage

Infections
- Mycobacteria, particularly tuberculosis
- Fungal infections (mucormycosis)
- Lung abscess
- Necrotising pneumonia (Klebsiella, Staphylococcus, Legionella)

Iatrogenic
- Swan-Ganz catheterisation
- Bronchoscopy
- Transbronchial biopsy
- Transcarotid aspiration

Parasitic
- Hydatid cyst
- Paragonimiasis

Trauma
- Blunt/penetrating injury
- Suction ulcers
- Tracheoarterial fistula

Neoplasm
- Bronchogenic carcinoma
- Bronchial adenoma
- Pulmonary metastases
- Sarcoma

Haemoptysis in children
- Bronchial adenoma
- Foreign body aspiration
- Vascular anomalies

Vascular
- Pulmonary infarct, embolism
- Mitral stenosis
- Arteriobronchial fistula
- Arteriovenous malformations
- Bronchial telangiectasia
- Left ventricular failure

Coagulopathy
- Von Willebrand’s disease
- Haemophilia
- Anticoagulant therapy
- Thrombocytopenia
- Platelet dysfunction
- Disseminated intravascular coagulation

Vasculitis
- Behcet’s disease
- Wegener’s granulomatosis

Pulmonary
- Bronchiectasis (including cystic fibrosis)
- Chronic bronchitis
- Emphysematous bullae

Miscellaneous
- Lymphangioleiomyomatosis
- Catamenial (endometriosis)
- Pneumococcosis
- Broncholith
- Idiopathic

Spurious
- Epistaxis
- Haematemesis

site of bleeding is essential in the management of massive haemoptysis and urgent bronchoscopy should be considered. Fibreoptic bronchoscopy can be performed at the bedside and allows visualisation of more peripheral and upper lobe lesions, but has a limited suction capacity. Rigid bronchoscopy provides superior suction to maintain airway patency, but it has a limited ability to identify peripheral lesions and does not permit good views of the upper lobes. It is usually performed under general anaesthetic but can be performed under local anaesthesia and sedation in experienced hands. The techniques can be combined when the fibreoptic bronchoscope is passed through the lumen of the rigid bronchoscope.

Bronchoscopic treatment
Instillation of epinephrine (1:20 000) is advocated to control bleeding, although its efficacy in life threatening haemoptysis is uncertain. The topical application of thrombin and thrombin-fibrinogen solutions has also had some success, but further study is required before widespread use can be recommended.

In massive haemoptysis, isolation of a bleeding segment with a balloon catheter may prevent aspiration of blood into the large airways, thereby maintaining airway patency and oxygenation. Having identified the segmental bronchus that is the source of bleeding, the bronchoscope is wedged in the orifice. A size 4–7 Fr 200 cm balloon catheter is passed through the working channel of the bronchoscope and the balloon is inflated in the affected segment, isolating the bleeding site (fig 7). A double lumen balloon catheter (6 Fr, 170 cm long) with a detachable valve at the proximal end has recently been designed that passes through the bronchoscope channel and allows the removal of the bronchoscope without any modification of the catheter. The second channel of the catheter may also be used to instil vasoactive drugs to help control bleeding. The bronchoscope can then be removed over the catheter, which is left in place for 24 hours. The balloon may be deflated under controlled conditions with bronchoscopic visualisation and the catheter removed if the bleeding has stopped. The prolonged use of balloon tamponade catheters should be avoided to prevent ischaemic mucosal injury and post-obstructive pneumonia. Endobronchial tamponade should only be applied as a temporary measure until a more definitive therapeutic procedure can be deployed.

Neodymium-yttrium-aluminium-garnet (Nd-YAG) laser photocoagulation has been used with some success in the management of massive haemorrhage associated with directly visualised endobronchial lesions. However, targeting the culprit vessel with the laser beam can be difficult in the presence of ongoing bleeding.

Bronchial artery embolisation (BAE)
This was first reported by Remy and colleagues in 1977 and is increasingly used in the management of life threatening haemoptysis. The procedure involves the initial identification of the bleeding vessel by selective bronchial artery cannulation, and the subsequent injection of particles (polyvinyl alcohol foam, isobutyl-2-cyanoacrylate, Gianturco steel coils or absorbable gelatin pledgets) into the feeding vessel (fig 22.2). A number of features provide clues to the bronchial artery as the source of bleeding, including the infrequent identification of extravasated dye or the visualisation of tortuous vessels of the culprit vessel with the laser beam can be difficult in the presence of ongoing bleeding.
intimal tears, chest pain, pyrexia, haemoptysis, systemic embolisation, and neurological complications. When the anterior spinal artery is identified as originating from the bronchial artery, embolisation is often deferred owing to the risk of infarction and paraparesis.\(^{16}\) The development and application of coaxial microcatheter systems allows more selective catheterisation and embolisation of branches of the bronchial arteries, thereby reducing the risk of occluding branches such as the anterior spinal artery.\(^{17}\)

**Figure 22.3** Algorithm for management of massive haemoptysis. *Palliative measures may be appropriate in the setting of advanced malignancy.*

**Figure 22.4** Selective intubation of left main bronchus in a case of right sided massive haemoptysis.

**Figure 22.5** Control of left sided massive haemoptysis by tracheal intubation, placement, and inflation of a Fogarty catheter in the left main bronchus.
Surgical management

Surgery is considered for the management of localised lesions. Surgical mortality ranges from 1% to 50% in different series depending on selection criteria, but bias in the selection of candidates for surgery limits a direct comparison with medical treatment. Surgery is contraindicated in patients with inadequate respiratory reserve or those with inoperable lung cancer due to direct thoracic spread. Surgical resection is indicated when BAE is unavailable or the bleeding is unlikely to be controlled by embolisation. It remains the treatment of choice for the management of life threatening haemoptysis due to a leaking aortic aneurysm, selected cases of arteriovenous malformations, hydatid cyst, iatrogenic pulmonary rupture, chest injuries, bronchial adenoma, or haemoptysis related to mycetoma resistant to other treatments. Pulmonary artery rupture related to the use of pulmonary artery catheters may be temporarily controlled by withdrawing the catheter slightly and reinflating the balloon to compress the bleeding vessel more proximally. However, surgical resection of the bleeding vessel is the definitive management.

The onset of massive haemoptysis in a patient with a tracheostomy may be associated with the development of a tracheal-arterial fistula, usually the innominate artery. The prompt application of anterior and downward pressure on the tracheal cannula and overinflation of the tracheostomy balloon may help to tamponade the bleeding vessel, and immediate surgical review should be requested. Deflation of the tracheostomy balloon and removal of the tracheal cannula should be performed in a controlled environment.

Other treatment

The oral antifibrinolytic agent tranexamic acid, an inhibitor of plasminogen activation, is frequently used to control recurrent haemoptysis. Intravenous vasopressin has also been used but caution is advised in patients with coexistent coronary artery disease or hypertension. Vasoconstriction of the bronchial artery may also hamper effective BAE by obscuring the site of bleeding, leading to difficulties in cannulation of the artery. Systemic antifungal agents have been tried in the management of haemoptysis related to mycetoma, but the results have been poor. By contrast, the direct instillation of antifungal drugs such as amphotericin B with or without N-acetylcysteine or iodine by means of a percutaneous or transbronchial catheter in the cavity has resulted in satisfactory control of haemoptysis in some cases. This technique should be considered in patients with ongoing bleeding following attempted BAE who are not otherwise fit for surgical resection.

Invasive therapeutic procedures have no role in the management of pulmonary haemorrhage related to coagulopathy, blood dyscrasias, or immunologically mediated alveolar haemorrhage. Appropriate medical treatment is usually sufficient. On the rare occasion when an immunologically mediated alveolar haemorrhage leads to massive haemoptysis, the administration of systemic corticosteroids, cytotoxic agents, or plasmapheresis may be useful. The long term administration of danazol or gonadotrophin releasing hormone agonists may prove useful in the management of catamenial haemoptysis. Radiation therapy has been used in the management of massive haemoptysis associated with vascular tumours or mycetoma by inducing necrosis of feeding blood vessels and vascular thrombosis due to perivascular oedema.

OUTCOME

Mortality has been closely correlated with the volume of blood expectorated, the rate of bleeding, the amount of blood retained within the lungs and premorbid respiratory reserve, independent of the aetiology of bleeding. The mortality rate is 58% when the rate of blood loss exceeds 1000 ml/24 hours, compared with 9% if bleeding is less than 1000 ml/hour. The mortality rate in patients with malignancy is 59%, which increases to 80% in the presence of a combination of malignant aetiology and a bleeding rate of more than 1000 ml/24 hours. A better outcome has been noted for massive haemorrhage due to bronchectasis, lung abscess, or necrotising pulmonary infections, with a mortality rate of less than 1% in some series.

SUMMARY

The unpredictable and potentially lethal course of massive haemoptysis requires prompt resuscitation, airway protection and correction of coagulopathy. Early investigation with bronchoscopy is recommended for localisation and control of bleeding by the application of topical adrenaline, balloon tamponade or selective lung intubation. There is increasing acceptance of bronchial artery embolisation as the treatment of choice to control acute massive haemoptysis that continues despite conservative treatment when a bronchial artery can be identified as the source of bleeding. Surgical resection remains
the treatment of choice for particular conditions, where the bleeding site is localised and the patient is fit for lung resection.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors thank Dr Leslie Mitchell for providing the radiographic and bronchial embolisation images and Dr Stephen Cook and John Sternman for reviewing the manuscript.

REFERENCES

ventilator alarms 90
ventilator associated pneumonia (VAP) 4–5, 24–8
ventilator induced lung injury (VILI) 52
avoidance 61
clinical consequences 56–7
manifestations 54–5
mechanisms 55–6, 60
ventilator and patient determinants 52–4
ventricular assist devices 95
very late activation antigen 4 (VLA-4) 125
visual disturbance 94
volume controlled ventilation 61–2, 82
volutrauma 53
von Willebrand factor antigen 33
weaning
acute severe asthma 90–1
cystic fibrosis 108
non-invasive ventilation 77, 119
obstructive lung disease 77, 83–4
predictors of success 74–5
psychological support 77
specialist unit 78
techniques 77
weaning failure 74–7, 83–4
Wegener's granulomatosis 114–16, 128
wheeze 87, 126
work of breathing 76, 86
xenon-133 ventilation-perfusion lung scintigraphy 102